М.Я. Баракова Р.И. Журавлева

# <u>язык</u>

для горных инженеров •

Издание третье, переработанное и дополненное



Москва «Высшая школа» 2001

#### ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Настоящая книга является третьим изданием учебника английского языка для вузов горно-геологического профиля. По своим учебным целям и содержанию учебник соответствует требованиям Программы по иностранным языкам для вузов неязыковых специальностей и предназначен для студентов, продолжающих изучать английский язык после школы (1-2 курс технического вуза).

В основу учебника положен принцип профессиональной направленности и коммуникативной ориентации.

Цель учебника — научить студентов читать литературу по тематике, близкой к их будущей специальности, и уметь вести бесседу в рамках пройденной тематики (участие в диалогах, владение речевыми клише, сообщение информации на уровне монологического высказывания и др.). В учебнике уделяется внимание письменной речи (выполнение письменных заданий, перевод текстов, составление планов, аннотаций, рефератов и др.).

В целях дальнейшего развития языковой компетенции в учебник включены упражнения на отработку фонетики, лексический минимум, состоящий из общетехнической и общенаучной лексики. Учебник предусматривает повторение некоторых разделов грамматики, известных студентам из школьного курса обучения. Однако повторение трамматического материала происходит на новом языковом материале с учетом особенностей научно-технического стиля речи. Внимание уделяется пассивным конструкциям, строевым словам, союзам, неличным формам глагола, синтаксису простого и сложного предложений, словообразованию и др. Значительная часть грамматического материала представлена в таблицах.

Учебник состоит из 10 уроков. Каждый урок представлен тремя разделами и рассчитан на 18-20 учебных часов работы в аудитории и примерно 10 часов самостоятельной работы.

Первые два раздела включают близкие по тематике тексты (текст А и текст Б), которые снабжены словарями и пояснениями сложных оборотов и реалий. Предтекстовые и послетекстовые упражнения служат для закрепления грамматических явлений, лексического минимума урока и развития коммуникативной компетенции.

Третий раздел каждого урока начинается с текста В, который содержит минимальное количество новых лексических единиц и предназначен для чтения, перевода и обсуждения в аудитории. К тексту В назначен для чтения, перевода и оосуждения в аудитории. К тексту в даются специальные речевые упражнения, развивающие умение извлекать из текста информацию. В третьем разделе урока имеются микротексты, служащие материалом для проведения дискуссий, конференций, интервью, а также для письменного перевода и др.

В основном тексты учебника взяты из современной оригинальной англо-американской научно-технической литературы и подобраны так,

что они знакомят студентов с тематикой их будущей специальности.

Предтекстовые и послетекстовые упражнения направлены: 1) на усвоение лексического минимума, который дается до текстов А и Б в виде списков слов, расположенных в алфавитном порядке, с транскрипцией и переводом (в отдельных случаях приводятся словосочетания, синонимы и антонимы); 2) на закрепление грамматического материала; 3) на развитие навыков устной речи в пределах изучаемой тематики. Почти все уроки завершаются заданиями творческого характера (участие в дискуссии, конференции, интервью, решение мыслительных задач, кроссвордов и др.).

## Методические указания

Материал учебника рассчитан как на аудиторную, так и самостоятельную работу студентов.

Работа в аудитории (разделы А и Б) предполагает: 1) повторение правил чтения, выполнение фонетических упражнений; 2) внимательное чтение словарного минимума к текстам А и Б с последующим выполнением лексических упражнений и упражнений по расширению словарного запаса; 3) чтение и контроль понимания содержания текста; 4) вопросо-ответные упражнения; 5) суммирование или обобщение прочитанного текста по ключевым словам, речевым клише или по плану; 6) организация бесед, описание схем и рисунков с помощью ключевых слов и наводящих вопросов.

В разделе Б предусматривается работа над текстом Б, выполнение речевых упражнений, направленных на извлечение информации из текста, чтение дополнительных текстов с выполнением соответствующих заданий, подготавливающих студентов к проведению дискуссий, интервью, решение мыелительных задач и кроссвордов и др.

Самостоятельная работа студентов заключается: 1) в чтении, устном или письменном переводе текста; 2) в изучении словаря-минимума к текстам А и Б, в выполнении упражнений, рекомендуемых преподавателем; 3) в повторении грамматического материала, приведенного в тексте урока, с использованием таблиц или по рекомендуемой преподавателем грамматике английского языка; 4) в написании аннотаций или рефератов.

<u>Приложение</u> содержит краткие сведения о буквах и звуках английского языка и правилах чтения, а также обобщающие таблицы по грамматике и словообразованию. Приведены также рекомендации по составлению аннотации и реферата научного текста.

# UNIT 1 Mining Education in Russia

Δ	Гранматика.	
Λ.	I DUMMUMUKU.	

1. Глаголы to be ("быть") и to have ("иметь") в Present, Past, Future Simple (Indefinite)

2. Структура повествовательного предложения.

3. Спряжение глаголов в простом настоящем и про-

шедшем времени.

4. Общие и специальные вопросы.

Текст А.

The First Mining School in Russia.

Б. Грамматика.

Разделительный вопрос.

Текст Б.

Mining and Geological Higher Education in Russia.

B. Tekcm B.

# A

#### ГРАММАТИКА

# 1. Глаголы to be ("быть") и to have ("иметь")

# Cupamenne raarona to be a Present Simple (Indefinite)

Лицо	Утвердительная форма	Отрицательная форма	Вопросительная форм
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	E	динственное число	
1-e	I am (l'm)	I am (I'm) not	Am I?
3-e	He is (he's)	He is not (isn't)	Is he?
	She is (she's)	She is not (isn't)	¹ Is she?
	It is (it's) [Its]	It is not (isn't)	is it?
	Mı	ножественное число	
1-c	We are (we're)	We are not (area't)	Are we?
2-c	You are (you're)	You are not (aren't)	Are you?
3-e	They are (they're)	They are not (aren't	Are they?
		Краткие ответы:	
	Yes, I am.	Ne, I'm not.	
	Yes, he (she, it) is.	No, he (she,	it) isn't ('s not).
	Yes, we (you, they) are.	No. we (you.	they) aren't ('re not).

#### Cupameune ruarona to be a Past Simple (Indefinite)

Утвердительная форма		Вопросительная форма		Отринательная форма	
He, she, it was		Was	{ he, she, it?	I was not He, she, it (wasa't)	
We You They	were	Were	we? you? they?	We You They	were not (weren't)

# Cupamenne rantona to be a Future Simple (Indefinite)

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма	
i shali/wili ('li) be	Shali/Will I be?	I shall/will not (shan't/won't) be	
He She It will ('li) be	Will { he she it } be?	He She   will not (won't) be	
We shall/will ("H) be	Shall/Will we be?	We shall/will not (shan't/won't) be	
You They will ('II) be	Will {you they}be?	You   will not (won't) be	

Остальные глаголы спрягаются в Future Simple так же, как глагол to be (т.е. shall, will, 'll + инфинитив). Will с 1-м лицом характерно для разговорной речи, как и краткие формы 'll (для всех лиц), shan't (shall + not) и won't (will + not).

# Cupamenne garoas to have a Present, Past a Future Simple (Indefinite)

Простое настоящее время	Простое прошедшее время	Простое будущее время	
I (we, you, they) have He (she, it) has	I (we, you, they)	I (we) shall/will ('ll) have He (she, it, you, they) will/'ll have	

В разговорной речи (в британском варианте языка) в значении обладания употребляется форма с **got**:

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма
I/wc/you/they have ('ve) got (a car, a dog и т.д.)	Have I/we/you/they got?	We/you/they have not (haven't) got
He/she/it has ('a) got (a car, a dog и т.д.)	Has he/she/it got?	He/she/it has not (hasn't) got (a cár, a dog и тд.)

Примечание: В американском английском вопросительная и отрицательная формы содержат do:

Do I/wc/you/they have...? Wc... don't have... Does he/she/it have...? She... doesn't have...

I have got an interesting article on open-cast mining.

У меня *есть* интересная статья по открытой разработке месторождений.

В отрицательном предложении часто употребляется местоимение во:

He has no textbook on geology.

(He has not got any textbook on geology.)

У него нет (никакого) учебника по геодогии.

Краткие отрицательные ответы образуются при помощи частицы **not**:

Have you got a map of the region? No, I have not. (I haven't.) У вас есть карта района?

Нет. (У меня нет.)

# 2. Структура новествовательного предложения

В повествовательном предложении в английском языке существует твердый порядок слов.

Порядок слов в английском повествовательном предложении

0	1	11	JII			IV			
Обстоя-	Подлежа-			Дополнение			Дополнение Обстоя		Обстоя-
тельство времени	щее	Moc	косвен- ное	1 - 1 - 1		тельство места, времени			
a)	The Academy	gives	students	excellent education	in general and special subjects.				
6) Today	our lectures	begin				at 10.20 a.m.			
в)	The librarian	gave	us	books		two days ago			
r) in 1925	the Academy	had		well-equip- ped labor- atories.					

# 3. Спряжение глаголов в простом настоящем и прошедшем времени

# Present Simple (Indefinite)

Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма		
I work.	Do I work?	I do not work.		
He She It works.	Does { he she it } work?	He She It does not work		
We You They work.	( we )	We You They do not work.		

#### Past Simple (Indefinite)

у Утвердительная форма	Вопросительная форма	Отрицательная форма	
I He She It worked.	Did { inc she it } work?	I He She It	
We You They worked.	Did { we you they} work?	We You They	

# 4. Общие и специальные вопросы

Общий вопрос не содержит вопросительного слова, всегда требует ответа «да» или «нет» и начинается со вспомогательного (модального) глагола или глагола-связки:

<ul><li>Is Great Britain rich in mineral resources?</li><li>Yes, it is.</li></ul>	<ul><li>Богата Великобритания природными ресурсами?</li><li>Да.</li></ul>
- Can you speak English?	<ul> <li>Вы говорите по-англий- ски?</li> </ul>
- No, I cannot.	— Нет (, не говорю).
<ul><li>Do you understand me?</li><li>Yes, I do. (No, I don't.)</li></ul>	— Ты понимаешь меня? — Да. (Нет.)
<ul><li>Did he work hard?</li><li>Yes, he did.</li></ul>	<ul><li>— Он много работал?</li><li>— Да.</li></ul>
<ul><li>Have you got a brother?</li><li>Yes, I have.</li></ul>	<ul><li>У тебя есть брат?</li><li>Да (, есть).</li></ul>

Ответы на общие вопросы обычно краткие. Краткая форма ответа состоит из слова уез или по, подлежащего, выраженного соответствующим местоимением, вспомогательного (модального) глагола. Например: Yes, I am. No, he isn't. Yes, they did и т.д.

Порядок слов в оба	шен вош	oce
--------------------	---------	-----

Вспомога- тельный	Под- лежа-	Смысло- вой гла-	, <b>, ,</b> -	степенны редложен	Краткий ответ	
(модаль- ный) гла- гол	щее	гол или им. часть сказуем.	Опре- деле- ние к доп.	Допол- нение ство	Обстоя- тель-	
Does	he	read	English	articles?		Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.
Did	the engi- neer	learn	a foreign	language	at school?	Yes, he did. No, he didn't.
Was	she	a good pupil?				Yes, she was. No, she wasn't.
Have	you	(got)	many	friends	here?	Yes, I have. No, I haven't.
Can	he	speak		English	well?	Yes, he can. No, he can't.

Давайте проследим логическую цепочку действий при образовании общего вопроса. Так как это всегда вопрос к сказуемому, то начинать надо с отыскания сказуемого в предложении. Признаком сказуемого может служить вспомогательный или модальный глагол (to have, to be в разных формах, can, must, shall, will и др.). В предложении All our students can speak English вы легко находите сказуемое — can + инфинитив speak (без частицы to). Теперь вернитесь на минуту к таблице «Порядок слов в общем вопросе»: в вопросе модальный глагол стоит перед подлежащим, а инфинитив основного глагола после подлежащего — они разделяются и ставят между собой подлежащее. Итак, что у вас получилось?

Can all our students speak English?

Таков правильный ответ.

Теперь возьмем другое предложение: These scientists wrote the first textbook for geology students. В нем нет вспомогательного или модального глагола. Как отыскать сказуемое? Вспомните о порядке слов. Предложение должно начинаться с «группы

where

педлежащего» (т.е. подлежащего и его определения) — это в данном случае these scientists. за ним должно следовать сказуемое — это wrote, форма прошедщего времени глагола to wnte. Для того чтобы построить общий вопрос, вам нужно ввести вспомогательный глагол. В Present и Past Simple это могут быть глаголы do, does — did. Какой вы выберете? Это должен быть глагол did, так как сказуемое предложения стоит в Past Simple, основной же глагол будет стоять после подлежащего в основной форме (инфинитив). Итак, как звучит ваш вопрос? Правильный вопрос: Did these scientists write(!) the first textbook... и т.д.? Надеемся, вы теперь сумеете правильно построить общий вопрос к следующему предложению:

Our teacher speaks English at the lessons. Правильно построенный вопрос звучит так: Does our teacher speak (!) English at the lessons?

Специальные вопросы относятся к какому-нибудь члену предложения (но не к сказуемому), начинаются с вопросительного слова или группы слов с вопросительным местоимением или наречием. Например:

где?, куда? когла? who(m) KTO?, KOPO?, KOMY? что?, какой? what какой?, если which предоставляется выбор what kind of... какой? whose чей? как? how

how many (how much) сколько? why почему?

Специальные вопросы всегда требуют полного ответа, в котором сообщается информация.

В вопросах к подлежащему и его определению сохраняется прямой порядок слов и не используются вспомогательные глаголы do, does, did.

#### Порядок слов в вопросе к подлежищему

Подлежащее - вопросительное слово	Основной глагол	Второстепенные члены предложения	Ответ на вопрос
Who	work(s)	at the mine?	The miners do.
Kto	paботает	на шахте?	Шахтеры.
Whose book	is	on the table?	Mine.
Чья книга		на столе?	Моя.
<b>Who</b> Кто	speaks говорит	English here? здесь по-английски?	I do. Я. Jane does. Джейн.

В вопросах к другим членам предложения за вопросительным словом следует вспомогательный (или модальный) глагол, затем подлежащее, основной глагол (в форме инфинитива без частицы to), затем второстепенные члены предложения. Внимательно изучите примеры!

## Порядок слов и специальном вопросе

Вопроси- тельное слово или группа слов	Вспомога- тельный глагол	Подлежа- щее	Основной глагол (в инфинитиве)	Второстепен- ные члены предложения	Член пред- ложения, к которому задан вопрос
What Что	does	the manager менеджер	do делает	every morning? каждое утро?	Дополнение
What kind of job Kakyro paботу	does	the manager менеджер	do выпол- няст	every day? каждый день?	Определение дополнения
What coal Какой уголь	does	the mine шахта	produce? произво- дит?		Определение дополнения
When Korдa	do	you Thi	get up встаешь	in the morning? утром?	Обстоя- тельство времени
Where Где	did	you Bы	buy закупили	the mining equipment? это горное оборудование?	Обстоя- тельство места

## ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

## 1. Прочитайте вслух следующие слова!:

- 'active, a'cademy, 'rapid, 'national, 'contact, es'tablish
- 'country, re'public, 'number, con'struction, in'dustrial 'college, 'volume, 'foreign, 'problem, 'prospecting וֹגוֹ
- [c]
- [5:] 'ore, trans' form, im' portant, la boratory, 'call 'for
- 'work. 'works. 'worker. 'journal, re'search, 'metallurgy [a:] —
- [kw] 'quality, 'qualified, ,qualifi'cation
- [k] 'technical, me'chanical, techno'logical, mechani'zation
- [ail 'mining, 'popularize, scien'tific, pro'vide, 'library
- 2. Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 ваза про себя. затем вслух и поставайтесь запомнять их.
  - авреат (э'різ) у появляться; ка-Заться: ant diseases исчезать
  - bed [bed] и пласт, слой, полстилающие породы: syn laver. seam: bedded a пластовый
  - call for ['kɔ:l 'fɔ:] v требовать; syn demand, require
  - carry out ['kæri 'aut] v провопить (исследование, эксперимент): выполнять (план): завершать: svn conduct, make
  - colliery ['kɔliən] каменноугольная шахта
  - concentration (dressing) plant [pla:nt] обогатительная фабрика, обогатительная уста-HOBKS
  - department [di'po:tmont] # oTделение, факультет, кафедpa; syn faculty
  - direct [di'rekt] и руководить; направлять; управлять; а прямой, точный; directly adv прямо, непосредственно
  - education [,edju(:)'ket(f)n] n obразование: просвещение: get an education получать образование

- establish [is'tæblij] у основы-<sup>→</sup> вать, создавать, учреждать: syn found, set un
- ferrous ['feres] metals черные металлы (non-ferrous metals цветные металлы)
- iren ['atən] и железо: big iren TVIVH: cast from TVIVH. TVIVHная отливка
- open-cast mines открытые разработки
- оге [o:(r)] n руда; iron оге железная руда; оте шіпітя разработка рудных месторождений
- process ['prouses] v обрабатывать; syn work, treat; 'arocealing n ofработка: разделение минералов rapid ['ræpid] а быстрый
- research [ri'sə:tf] n Haydhoe ncследование
- technique [tek'ni:k] п техника, способ, метод, технический присм; mining technique горная техника, методы ведения горных работ
- train [trein] v обучать, готовить (K 4EMY-A.); training ['treinin] обучение: полготовка

to be in need of нуждаться в to take part in участвовать в

<sup>1</sup> При выполнении фонетических упражнений пользуйтесь Приложением 1 в конце книги.

## 3. a) Переведите прилагательные с суффиксом -al:

educational, technical, geological, chemical

- б) Заполните пропуски прилагательными, образованными от выделениях существительных:
- 1. Russian higher schools give the young people an all-round education. The number of higher ... institutions increased greatly.
- 2. Chemistry is an important branch of the national economy. The ... industry produces plastics, synthetic materials and other products.
- 3. The students specialize in geology at the ... institutes.
- 4. The scientists of the Moscow Mining Academy carried out research and developed mining technique. They popularized ... achievements among miners.

## 4. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и нереведите их:

higher education
educational institutions
bedded deposits
scientific research institutes
factories for processing
ferrous and non-ferrous
metals
to direct scientific research

scientific research the ore mining industry geological prospecting collieries and open-cast mines

- to work on important mining problems
- to call for the establishment of new educational institutions
- Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корией с корилии соответствующих слов в русском языке:

The Moscow Mining Academy; technical education; highly qualified specialists; geological prospecting; the prominent geologist and oil expert; well-equipped laboratories and demonstration rooms; Russian and foreign scientific books and journals; close contacts with the coal and ore mining industries; to take an active part in the construction of new industrial enterprises; to organize new institutes; to popularize technical achievements

6. Прочитайте текст А. Скажите, какие учебные заведения были созданы в России на базе Московской горной академии:

#### **TEKCT A**

## The First Mining School in Russia

The Moscow Mining Academy was established in 1918. The main task of the Academy was to train mining engineers and technicians, to popularize technological achievements among miners, to work on important problems of mining and metallurgical engineering and to direct scientific research.

There were three departments in the Academy<sup>2</sup>: mining, geological prospecting and metallurgy. The Moscow Mining Academy introduced a new course in coal mining mechanization which provided the basis for the development of mining engineering. The two scientists A.M. Terpigorev and M.M. Protodyakonov wrote the first textbook on machinery for mining bedded deposits.

Much credit for the establishment of the Moscow Mining Academy and the development of co-operation among outstanding scientists and educators is due to<sup>3</sup> Academician I.M. Gubkin, a prominent geologist and oil expert.

In 1925 the Moscow Mining Academy was one of the best-known educational institutions in Russia. It had well-equipped laboratories, demonstration rooms and a library which had many volumes of Russian and foreign scientific books and journals.

The Academy established close contacts with the coal and ore mining industries. The scientists carried out scientific research and worked on important mining problems.

The rapid growth of the mining industry called for the training of more highly-qualified specialists and the establishment of new educational institutions.

New collieries and open-cast mines, concentration plants, metallurgical works and metal-working factories for processing non-ferrous and ferrous metals appeared in the country. The people took an active part in the construction of new industrial enterprises.

The Academy alone could not cope with the problem of training specialists. In 1930 the Moscow Mining Academy was transformed into six independent institutes. Among the new colleges which grew out of the Academy's departments were the Moscow Mining Institute and the Moscow Institute of Geological Pro-specting. Later, the scientific research Institute of Mining appeared near Moscow.

#### пояснения к тексту

was established — была основана (пассивный залог; вводится дальше).
Ср. ниже established close contacts — установила тесные контакты

<sup>2</sup> There were three departments in the Academy — В Академии было три факультета.

Конструкция «there + глагол to be» (в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем времени) употребляется, когда нужно сообщить о наличии, существовании в данном месте предмета (предметов) или лица (лиц). Ображите внимание на то, что перевод предложений с таким оборотом лучше начинать с обстоятельства места (В Академии...). Подробнее см. Unit 4.

- <sup>3</sup> Much credit ... is due Большая заслуга... принадлежит
- 4 was transformed была преобразована (Ср. пояснение 1.)

#### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 7. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. There were four departments in the Academy.
- 2. The Academy introduced a new course in coal mining mechanization.
- In 1925 the Academy had only several well-equipped laboratories, demonstration rooms and a library which had many volumes of books.
- 4. The Academy established close contacts with the coal industry.
- 5. In 1930 the Academy was transformed into six independent institutes.
- The Moscow Mining Institute and the Moscow Institute of Geological Prospecting were among the new colleges which grew out of the Academy's departments.

## 8. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What was the main task of the Academy?
- 2. What new course did the Academy introduce?
- 3. Were there three or four departments at the Academy?
- 4. What industries did the Academy establish contacts with?
- 5. Who wrote the first textbook on machinery for mining bedded deposits?
- 6. Why was the Academy transformed into six independent institutes?
- 7. Why was the Academy transformed?

# 9. Подберите к глаголам из синска А соответствующие существительные из списка Б. Переведите словосочетания.

#### A

- 1. to carry out
- 2. to direct
- 3. to prospect for
- 4. to introduce
- 5. to equip
- 6. to establish

#### Б.

- a) new courses
- b) laboratories
- B) experiments
- r) research
- д) contacts
- e) new deposits

# 10. а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов.

- 1. mining equipment
- 2. to carry out research
- 3. new course in
- 4. to direct scientific activity
- 5. to take an active part in
- 6. prospecting for oil
- 7. bedded deposit
- 8. concentration plant
- 9. technical education
- 10. processing of nonferrous metals
- 11. the training of geologist and mining engineers
- 12. concentration plant

- а) обогатительная фабрика
- б) подготовка горных инженеров
- в) разведка нефти
- г) обработка цветных металлов
- д) техническое образование
- е) новый (учебный) курс по
- ж) принимать активное участие
- з) проводить исследования
- и) направлять научную деятельность
- к) горное оборудование
- л) пластовые месторождения

#### Найдите в левой колонке английские эквиваленты русских сочетаний слов.

# 11. Найдите в каждом ряду слова или сочетания слов, имеющие наиболее общее значение.

engineer, chemist, geologist, specialist, economist coal, mineral resources, oil, iron, gas, ferrous metals oil industry, gas industry, extractive industry the sun, atom, gas, energy source, coal, oil

# 12. Составьте предложения из следующих слов:

- 1. traditions, our, interesting, has, university, many
- 2. an, plays, of, role, people, life, the, music, important. in
- 3. this, did, the university, why, enter, you?
- 4. sport, is, what, favourite, your?

- 13. a) Hostopure dopum Future Simple (Indefinite) ruarona to be (cm. c. 6). Hypocuparativé to réstil, to stay, to watch television a Future Simple.
- б) Вставьте нужный вспомогательный глагол shall/will или shan W won't, 7l.
- 1. What do you think life ... be like in the twenty-first century?

  2. I ...n't stay long here. 3. I think I ... watch television tonight. 4. Just a minute. I think I ... buy a newspaper. 5. In the next century people ... fly to other planets. 6. I hope they ... be happy here. I'm afraid they ...n't. 7. ... you help me with my huggage? 8. In January the weather ... be colder. 9. We ... be back from England in August, I think. 10. We ...n't be there for ever.
- 14. а) Составьта вопросы, ответами на которые являются следующие предложения:
- 1. Yes, they did. (The scientists carried out research in the field of geology and mining.)

2. No, there were not. (There were only a few higher mining

schools in the country.)

- 3. No, it did not. (The Academy established close contacts with the coal and ore mining industries.)
- 4. Yes, they did. (They took an active part in the development of heavy industry.)
- 6) Прочитайте отнет на вопрос. Затем вставьте соответствующее вопросительное слово (what, who, why, where, when, which, how, how long, how old) в начале каждого предложения.
  - 1. ... does the economy of the country depend on?
  - 2. ... are there large fuel and energy complexes?
  - 3. ... discovered new deposits of brown coal?
  - 4, ... does the engineer get to the capital?
  - 5. ... do you travel so much?
  - 6. ... did he stay in Great Britain?
  - 7. ... is your brother?

- On its fuel and energy resources.
- In the eastern areas.
- Geologists did.
- By air.
- I like travelling.
- Several months.
- Twenty-one (years old).

15. Найдите в тексте А предложения, в которых сказуеные выражены глаголами в форме простого промедшего времени (The Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense). Занимите их, как показано в примере.

Hanpumep: were — to be; trained — to train.

16. а) Прочтите следующий текст. Найдите в каждом яредложении групку подлежащее-сказуемое. Определите временную форму глаголовсказуемых. Переледите текст на русский язык.

When Mikhail Lomonosov came to Moscow he gained admission to the Slavonic-Greek-Latin Academy. He made rapid progress. Then he entered the Academy of Sciences. His abilities and diligence attracted the attention of the professors and as one of the three best students he continued his education abroad. There he studied chemistry, mathematics, metallurgy and mining. On his return to Russia he became a professor and a member of the Academy of Sciences.

For versatility Lomonosov has no equal in Russian science. Many of his ideas and discoveries won recognition only in the nineteenth century. For instance, he was the first who discovered the vegetation origin of coal, and as a poet and scientist he played a great role in the formation of the Russian literary language.

His living memorial is the Moscow University, which he founded in 1755.

- Составьте висьменяю 5 общих/ в 5 специальных попросав к тексту о Ломоносове.
  - 17. Переведите предложения, используя следующие сочетания слов:

there appeared; to establish close contacts with; to carry out research; to train engineers and technicians; to call for specialists

- 1. Московская горная академия готовила инженеров и техников для горной и металлургической промышленности.
- 2. Ученые проводили научные исследования в области геологии, горного дела и металлургии.
- 3. Академия устанавливала тесные контакты с угольными бассейнами и промышленными предприятиями.
- 4. Быстрое развитие промышленности в стране требовало подготовки высококвалифицированных специалистов.
- 5. В стране появились новые специальные учебные заведения.

18. Выразите несогласие со следующими высказываниями и подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста. Используйте предлагаемые разговорные формулы:

I don't think so; on the contrary; to my mind; in my opinion; as far as I know; as is known; in fact

- 1. The task of the Moscow Mining Academy was to train mining specialists only.
- 2. The Academy established contacts with representatives of all branches of industries.
- 3. There were five departments in the Academy.
- 4. There were only Russian books in the library of the Academy.
- 5. The rapid growth of the mining industry led to the establishment of new higher schools.
- 6. These scientists wrote the first textbook on machinery.
- 7. There were only a few higher educational establishments which trained geologists and mining engineers.
- 8. New collieries and open-cast mines appeared in different parts of the country.

# 19. а) Выберите пужную форму глаголя из приведенных в скобках.

My name (is, was, am) Victor Sedov. I (is, am, was) seventeen years old. I (is, was, am) a first-year student of the mining college. Our college (is, are, was) in the centre of the town.

I (have, has, had) a lot of friends at the college. After the course of studies we (shall, will, are) going to become mining engineers.

My grandfather (were, was, will be) a mining engineer too. He (was, had, is, have) a student of the Moscow Mining Academy many years ago. It (had, was, were) one of the best-known educational institutions in the Soviet Union. It (has, had, is) well-equipped laboratories and alibrary with many volumes of Russian and foreign books and journals on geology and mining.

- б) Расскажите о себе, используя слова и выражения из а).
- 20. Побеседуйте с важим другом о Московской гориой академии. Спросите, какие там были факультеты; как развивалась научная деятельность; каково значение академии в развитии гориого дела в стране. Используйте активную лексику урока, вопросительные слова, а также разговорные формулы на с. 20.

# **5** ГРАММАТИКА

## Разделительный вопрос

	Повествовательно		
Подлежа- щее	Сказуемое	казуемое Второстепенные члены предложения	
This	+ is a good idea,		- isn't it?
You	+ are Mr. Smith,		- aren't you?
She	+ has got	a new car,	hasn't she?
You	- haven't	any brothers,	+ have you?
You	+ like	her,	don't you?
They	- don't understand	us,	+ do they?
He	+ speaks	English;	doesn't he?
You	- didn't see	him yesterday,	+ did you?
Life	+ will be very different	in a hundred years' time,	ন্য , won't it? ালং :

Разделительный вопрос, как показано в таблице, состоит из утвердительного или отрицательного предложения и краткого вопроса, имеющего то же подлежащее, что и предложение (всегда местоимение), и вспомогательный глагол.

Если предложение отрицательное, то краткий вопрос утвердительный, и наоборот — если предложение утвердительное, то краткий вопрос содержит отрицание. (См. знаки + и - в таблице.) Краткий вопрос переводится на русский язык обычно как «не так ли», «не правда ли». Последнее предложение в таблице следует перевести: «Жизнь через 100 лет будет непохожей на нынешнюю, не правда ли?» (Переведите самостоятельно остальные примеры в таблице.)

Разделительные вопросы широко используются в устной речи. Значение вопроса меняется в зависимости от того, как вы произносите вопросительную часть. Если голос повышается, то это обычный общий вопрос, который требует ответа «да» или «нет» и солержит оттенок удивления, заинтересованности и т.п

- You haven't seen your manager today, ?have you? (=Have you seen your manager?)
- Вы не видели своего управляющего сегодня, не правда ли?

- No. I am afraid not.
  Боюсь, что нет.

Если вопрос произносится с понижением голоса, то говорящий уверен в том, что он утверждает, и просит собеседника подтвердить это.

- You are free tonight, ↓ aren't vou?
- Вы ведь сегодня вечером свободны.

- Yes, I am.

— Ла.

# ПРЕЛТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

## 21. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [æ] 'graduate, 'value, 'language, 'practical
- [A] 'number. 'study. 'other, thus, us, ,under' graduate, in 'dustrial, 'structural
- [ai] de'sign, de'signer, mine, 'mining, 'science, hy'draulic, pro'vide, kind, higher
- [f] 'physical, 'physics, phone
- [k] me'chanical, 'chemist, 'chemistry, me'chanics, tech'nology, 'chemical
- [ ma'chine, ma'chinery, shape, 'specialist
  - б) Прочитайте следующие слова и запомните их произношение:

know [nou] - knowledge ['nolida] specialize ['spefolarz] - specialization [,spefolar'zersn] require [ri'kwaiə] — requirement [ri'kwaiəmənt] introduce [.introduction [.introduct

22. Прочитайте следующие снова и сочетания 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запоминть их.

change [tfemd3] v наменять(ся), менять(ся); syn. transform, alter; п изменение, перемена; преврашение

composition [,kompo'zif(o)n] n crpykтура, состав

connect [ka'nekt] v соединять(ся); syn combine, link

deal [di:l] (dealt) v (with) иметь дело с; рассматривать

demand [di'mo:nd] n 30. enpoc design [di'zain] n проект; план,

чертеж; конструкция; и проектировать, планировать; конструировать

determine [di tə:min] v определять. устанавливать

engineering [,end31'n19rin] n техника; технология: машиностроение: syn. technics, technology; technique; machinery

enterprise ['entəpraiz] и предприятие; предприимчивость

environment [in valaranment] n oxpy-жающая обстановка; среда

field [fi:id] и область, сфера деятельности; поле, участок, месторождение; бассейн; syn. basin, branch graduate ['grædjueit] v окончить

(высшее учебное заведение);

амер. окончить любое учебное заведение; ['grædjuit] и лицо,окончившее высшее учебное заведение; undergraduate (student) студент последнего курса; postgraduate (student) аспирант; graduation paper дипломная работа

hardware ['hɑ:dwsə] п аппаратура, (аппаратное) оборудование, аппаратные средства; техническое обеспечение

hydraulie' [hai'dro:lik] а гидравлический, гидротехнический

introduction [,Intro'dakf(o)n] n BBeдение, вступление

management ['mænidʒmənt] м управление, заведование; syn. administration; direction

offer ['ɔfə] v предлагать (помощь, работу); предоставлять; п предложение

гавде [reind3] и область, сфера; предел; диапазон; радиус действия; ряд; серия recreation [,rekn'elf(э)n] и отдых, восстановление сил, развлечение reveal [ri'vil] и показывать, обнаруживать

rock [rok] л горная порода

shape [feip] n форма

software ['softwaa] и программное обеспечение; программные средства

**skill** [skil] *п* мастерство; умение; **skilled** *а* квалифицированный, опытный, умелый

survey ['sə:vei] n съемка, маркшейдерская съемка; [sə'vei] v производить маркшейдерскую или топографическую съемку, производить изыскания, n surveying съемка, маркшейдерские работы

thus [öлs] adv таким образом

value ['vælju] n ценность, стоимость; величина;  $\nu$  ценить, оценивать, valuable a ценный

workshop ['wə:kʃɔp] л мастерская, цех; семинар

to be of importance иметь значение
to give an opportunity of дать возможность
to meet the requirements удовлетворять требованиям (потребности)

23. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корилии соответствующих слов в русском языке:

special institutes; geologists and mining engineers; mechanical and electrical engineers; social sciences; specialized subjects; the type of specialization and qualification; theoretical courses; economic geology; structural geology; to prospect for minerals; skilled engineering specialists; mining operations; mining technology; hydraulic engineering; electrical engineering; industrial electronics; mine machinery laboratories; control systems; rock mechanics; the use of computers; mineral dressing; mining research and its practical application; prospecting parties

24. Прочитайте текст Б и найдите в нем предложения, в которых говорится о том: 1) что изучает геология; 2) какие основные дисциплины должны изучать будущие геологи и горные инженеры:

#### TEKCT B

# Mining and Geological Higher Education in Russia

In Russia young people get mining education at special institutes which train geologists and mining engineers for coal and ore mining. The total number of students of an institute includes full-time students, part-time students and postgraduate students.

Russian higher educational establishments offer different specializations for the students. Thus, at the geological institutes, the students specialize in geology, the science which deals with different problems connected with the Earth, its history, the study of rocks, their physical and chemical properties. One of the main tasks of geology is to prospect, discover and study the deposits of useful minerals.

Geology is both a theoretical and an applied science. Mining geology is of great importance to the mining engineer. As a rule, mining geology includes economic geology.

The outstanding Russian geologist V.A. Obruchev says that geology is the science of the Earth which reveals to us how the Earth took shape, its composition and its changes. Geology helps prospect for ores, coal, oil, salt and other useful minerals.

Higher mining schools (universities, academies, institutes and colleges) develop a wide range of courses and programmes that meet the requirements of the society. They offer courses in mining technology, machinery and transport, hydraulic engineering, electrical engineering, industrial electronics, automation, surveying, geodesy, information technology, etc.

The main trend in the development of higher mining education is the introduction of courses in environmental protection, management (environmental human resources), economics and management of mining enterprises, marketing<sup>1</sup> studies, computer-aided design (CAD)<sup>2</sup> and others.

Computer science is also of great importance. The course aims at providing students with understanding how software and hardware technology helps solving problems.

Laboratory work is an important part in training specialists. Experiments in laboratories and workshops will help students to develop their practical skills. They have a short period of field work to gain working experience.

The students go through practical training at mines, plants and other industrial enterprises. They become familiar with all stages of production and every job from worker to engineer. Here they get practical knowledge and experience necessary for their diploma (graduation) papers.

A lot of students belong to students' scientific groups. They take part in the research projects which their departments usually conduct. Postgraduates carry out research in different fields of science and engineering.

Sport centres give the students opportunities to play different sports such as tennis, football, basketball, volleyball, swimming, skiing, water polo, boxing, wrestling and others.

Students graduate from mining and geological higher schools as mining engineers, mining mechanical engineers, ecologists, mining electrical engineers, geologists, economists and managers for mining industry.

#### ПОЯСНЕНИЯ К ТЕКСТУ Б

- 1. marketing n (маркетинг) процесс выявления и удождетворения спроса на изделия компании
- 2. computer-aided design (CAD) автоматизированное проектирование
- 25. Найдите в тексто и вышините существительные с суффиксами -ist, -ment, -ance, -tion и прилагательные с суффиксами -al, -ent, -ful, -ic, -able.

Существительные			Прилагательные					
-ist	-ment	-ance	-tion	-al	-ent	-ful	-łc	-able
	- <del></del>							

## 26. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

mining engineers
ore mining
full-time students
part-time students
postgraduate students
theoretical science
applied science
mineral deposits
structural geology
practical skills
practical training

higher mining schools
mining technology
hydraulic engineering
electrical engineering
industrial electronics
information technology
environmental protection
human resources
computer science
hardware/software technology
diploma paper

#### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

#### 27. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. Where can one get mining education in Russia?
- 2. What does geology study?
- 3. How did Obruchev define (определять) geology?
- 4. Does geology deal only with prospecting for useful minerals?
- 5. What specializations does the Mining Institute offer?
- 6. What subjects do the students study?
- 7. Where do the students go through practical training?
- 8. What does the computer course aim at?
- 9. Do the students play sports?

#### 28. а) Найдите в правой колонке русские экинваленты следующих сочетаний елов.

- physical and chemical properties
- the deposits of useful minerals
- 3. a wide range of problems
- 4. valuable deposits
- 5. mining mechanical engineer
- 6. to carry out scientific research \*
- 7. take shape
- 8. undergraduates
- 9. graduation paper
- 10. hardware and software

- а) широкий круг проблем
- б) ценные месторождения полезных ископаемых
- в) горный инженер-механик
- г) вести научно-исследовательскую работу
- д) принимать форму
- е) техническое и программное обеспечение
- ж) студенты (последнего курса)
- з) дипломная работа
- и) физические и химические свойства
- к) месторождение полезных ископлемых

#### Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов;

- 1 оканчивать институт
- 2. поступать в университет
- 3. получать образование
- 4. готовить геологов и горных инженеров
- 5 высшие горные учебные заведения
- 6. приобретать опыт
- 7. студенческие научные общества
- 8. заниматься различными видами спорта

- a) to train gelogists and mining engineers
- 6) to gain experience
- B) to play different sports
- r) students' scientific groups
- д) to graduate from the institute
- e) to get education
- **x**) to enter university
- 3) higher mining schools

# 29. Подберите к существительным из синска А соответствующие прилагательные из синска Б:

- A. 1. properties
  - 2. workers
  - 3. development
  - 4. equi pment
  - 5. ore
  - 6. subjects
  - 7. training
  - 8. scientist
  - 9. minerals

- B. a) basic
  - б) rich
  - B) practical
  - r) prominent (outstanding)
  - n) rapid.
  - e) reliable
  - x) skilled
  - з) valuableи) physical
  - n) physical

#### 30. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на значение местонмения both и союза both... and.

Местонмение	Парный союз
both oбa	<b>both and</b> u u, как так u

- 1. In Russia, young people get mining education both at special colleges and at mining departments of universities.
- 2. Practical work both in the field and in drawing classes is very important for the future surveyor.
- 3. The mining institutes design their courses to give attention both to basic engineering and mathematics. Both subjects are of great importance for the future engineer.
  - 4. The library has both scientific books and journals.
- 5. A new institute will train both geologists and mining engineers.
  - 6. Both methods of prospecting are in use.

# 31. Составьте 3 разделительных вопроса по каждому образну.

- Образец 1: These are your new group-mates, aren't they?
- Образец 2: You have got a lot of books on geology, haven't you?
- Obpaseu 3: She hasn't got any sisters or brothers, has she?
- Образец 4: You understand me, don't you?
- Образец 5: You don't know this man, do you?
- Образец 6: She likes to play sports, doesn't she?
- Obpaseu 7: You didn't go to the party yesterday, did you?
- Образец 8: She told you about a change in our plan, didn't she?

#### 32. Дополните разделительные вопросы по образну.

Образец:	
Geology is both a theoretical and applied science, isn't it?	
You don't take part in this research project, do you?	
1 - You aren't a student,?	
- No, I'm a teacher.	
2. Many students at your institute play different sport	s,
3. All your students know the name of the outstanding Russia	ın
geologist Obruchev,?	
4. He isn't a full-time student, ?	
5. You passed all your exams last year,?	
6. She graduated from the institute two years ago,?	
7. You don't speak English,?	
8. This is your teacher of English,?	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

## B

# 33. Прочитайте текст В без словаря. Кратко суммируйте его содержание.

# TEKCT B

In pre-revolutionary Russia there were several higher mining schools which trained geologists and mining engineers. The oldest Russian school of mining was in St. Petersburg, where some well-known scientists taught: A.P. Karpinsky, B.I. Boky and others. Among the famous scientists who lectured at the Yekaterinoslav (now Dnepropetrovsk) Mining Institute was Professor I.K. Sobolevsky, whose subject was mine surveying and geodesy.

The Technological Institute in Tomsk was opened in 1900. It was the oldest industrial and cultural centre of Siberia. The Tomsk Technological Institute had three departments: engineering, chemical and mining. The Don Polytechnic Institute founded in Novocherkassk in 1907 also had a mining department. In 1916 a new Mining Institute in Yekaterinburg came into existence.

The total number of students did not exceed two thousand with only 60 to 70 mining engineers who graduated from mining institutes each year. That was far below the number needed. It was quite obvious that the small number of these institutions could not cope with the problem of training specialists in the field of mining and geology. Little

wonder that there was a shortage of mining engineers and geologists in the mining regions of pre-revolutionary Russia.

After the Revolution the Moscow Mining Academy was the first higher mining educational establishment. In the early thirties the Academy established close contacts with the coal, oil and ore mining industries. The Academy's scientists carried out research in the Kursk Magnetic Anomaly, in the Donbas and in other industrial areas.

The need for geologists and mining engineers increased so much that the Academy could not cope with the problem of training a large number of specialists for the country. Among the new colleges which grew out of the Academy were the Moscow Mining Institute, the Oil Institute, the Institute of Geological Prospecting and others.

In 1950 a new mining institute appeared in Kemerovo, the centre of the coal and chemical industries in West Siberia. The Institute trained mining engineers for the coal and ore mining industries of the Kuzbas. Later the Kemerovo Mining Institute was transformed into the Polytechnic Institute which is now one of the largest and most important engineering colleges in West Siberia.

## **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- Найдите в каждом абзаце текста предложение, выражающее его основную мысль.
- 35. Прочитайте первые два абзяца текста в перечислите все горные вузы, которые вмелись в дореволюционной России.
- 36. Найдите в тексте вредложения, в которых дается оценка деятельности старейних горпых вузов России.
- Найдите в тексте английские эквиваленты следующих русских слов и сочетаний слов;

высшие учебные заведения; известные ученые; основы-вать; контингент студентов; справляться с (чем-л.); не удиви-тельно, что; недостаток горных инженеров и геологов; в на-чале 30-х годов; проводить исследования; к тому времени; большое количество; среди новых институтов; появляться; горнорудная промышленность; преобразовывать

38.	Дополинте	следующие	вопросы	u	дайте	OTBETH	110	тексту.	
	. **					• .•			

1. How many \_\_\_\_\_\_ in pre-revolutionary Russia?

2. Where	the oldest Russian school of mining?
3, What well-known	taught at St.Petersburg
School of Mining?	4
4. What subject	Professor Sobolevsky?
5. When	a mining institute in Yekaterinburg
into existen	ce?
6 a shor	tage of mining engineers and geologists in
pre-revolutionary Russia?	
7. What new mini	ng institute in 1950 in
Kemerovo?	

39. Опремедите, какой из трех заголовков лучие всего соответствует

1. Mining Education in Russia.

соденжанию текста В:

- 2. Mining Education in Siberia and the Far East.
- 3. The Development of Mining Education in Russia.

## 40. а) Переведите текст со слеварем:

In his book "Reminiscences of a Mining Engineer" Academician A.M. Terpigorev writes: "What I want to say to the young people of our country is: 'Love your work, put your heart and soul, all your knowledge and ability into it, and above all, never shirk small jobs, for it is small things that make up a great accomplishment. Be true patriots!

'If you love your people, if you link up your whole life with them and give them all your energy and knowledge, the people will respond with love and recognition. That is the conclusion I have drawn from my own life.' "

б) Выразите свое отношение к словам А.М. Терингорева.

# UNIT 2 Mining Education Abroad

А. Грамматика.	
-	1. Основные формы глагола.
	2. Времена группы Perfect.
Tercom A.	Mining Education in Great Britain.
Б. Грамматика	
-	Модальные глаголы и их эквиваленты
Текст Б.	Mining Education in Great Britain (продолжение)
В. Текст В.	
Дискуссия.	Проблемы горного образования в России и за рубежом.

# A

# **ГРАММАТИКА**

# 1. Основные формы глагола

Знание основных форм глагола поможет энм лучше ориентироваться в системе времен английского языка, в их понимании и употреблении.

I	II	Ш	ĮV
Infinitive  Неопреде- ленная форма	Past Simple (Indefinite) Прошедшее простое	Past Participle (P.II) Причастие прошедшего времени	Present Participle (P.I) Причастие настоящего времени
Это словарная форма глаголов. Характеризуется наличием частицы to, которая иногда может опускаться.	Правильные гла II и III формы суффикса -ed. II и III формы не (нестандартных) следует заучиват	К I форме гла- гола прибавля- ется -ing. Используется для образования группы времен Continuous.	
	Форма Past Simple. Для образования группы времен Perfect и всех времен Passive.		

#### Правильные глаголы

to assist	assisted	assisted	assist <b>ing</b>
nomorate	помогал	помогавший	помогающий
to produce	produced	produced	produc <b>ing</b>
производить	производил	произведенный	производящий

#### Неправильные глагоды

to begin	began	begun	beginn <b>ing</b>		
начинать	начал	начавший(ся)	начинающий(ся)		
to make	<b>mad</b> e	made	mak <b>ing</b>		
делать	делал	сделанный	делающий		

# 2. Времена грунны Perfect (Совершенные времена)

Времена группы Perfect выражают действие, завершившееся к моменту в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем или предшествующее этому моменту.

Глагольные формы времен этой группы состоят из вспомогательного глагола to have в соответствующем времени и причастия прошедшего времени смыслового глагола:

to have + 3-я форма смыслового глагола

Изменяется по лицам и временам только глагол to have, 3-я форма смыслового глагола остается неизменной: have/has/had asked; shall/will/have asked.

# HACTOЯЩЕЕ COBEPШЕННОЕ BPEMЯ (THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE)

has + причастие прошедшего времени
(Past Participle) смыслового глагола

Время Present Perfect выражает действие, которое полностью завершилось к моменту речи, или действие, которое совершилось в прошлом, но в настоящем имеется его результат:

#### Правильные глаголы

to assist	assist <b>ed</b>	assist <b>ed</b>	assist <b>ing</b>
помогать	помогал	помогавший	помогающий
to produce	produc <b>ed</b>	produc <b>ed</b>	produc <b>ing</b>
производить	производил	произведенный	производящий

#### Неправильные глаголы

to begin	<b>began</b>	<b>begun</b>	beginn <b>ing</b>
начинать	начал	начавший(ся)	начинающий(ся)
to make	<b>made</b>	<b>made</b>	mak <b>ing</b>
делать	делал	сделанный	делающий

# 2. Времена группы Perfect (Совершенные времена)

Времена группы Perfect выражают действие, завершившееся к моменту в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем или предшествующее этому моменту.

Глагольные формы времен этой группы состоят из вспомогательного глагола **to have** в соответствующем времени и причастия прошедшего времени смыслового глагола:

to have + 3-я форма смыслового глагола

Изменяется по лицам и временам только глагол to have, 3-я форма смыслового глагола остается неизменной: have/has/had asked; shall/will/have asked.

# НАСТОЯЩЕЕ СОВЕРШЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE)

have has + причастие прошедшего времени (Past Participle) смыслового глагола

Время Present Perfect выражает действие, которое полностью завершилось к моменту речи, или действие, которое совершилось в прошлом, но в настоящем имеется его результат:

They have opened the new road.

Они построили новую дорогу. (По ней уже ездят.)

В вопросах have/has ставится перед подлежащим; в отрицательных предложениях используется отрицание not:

- Have you seen her
   Ты видел(а) ее today?
  - сеголня?
- No, I haven't seen her yet.

В предложениях, содержащих глагол в Present Perfect, часто **употребляются** 

1) обстоятельственные слова, указывающие на период времени, который еще не закончился: today сегодня, this week на этой неделе, this month в этом месяце, this year в этом году:

It hasn't rained today.

Сегодня дождя не было.

2) наречия неопределенного времени: ever когда-либо, never никогда, already уже, yet еще, just только что и предложные конструкции с since c mex nop, после, before прежде и др.

Have you ever been to London? She has just left. I have had my car since 1990.

Ты когда-нибудь был(а) в Лондоне? Она только что ушла. У меня машина с 1990 гола.

На русский язык глаголы в Present Perfect обычно переводятся глаголами совершенного вида в прошедшем времени.

# ПРОШЕДШЕЕ СОВЕРШЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE PAST PERFECT TENSE)

причастие прошедшего времени had + (Past Participle) смыслового глагола

Прошедшее совершенное время употребляется для выражения действия, которое закончилось до какого-то момента времени в прошлом, а также действия, которое имело место ранее другого действия в прошлом.

I didn't go to see the film last night because I'd seen it before.

She told me she had never been to London before.

Я не пошла вчера в кино, потому что я видела этот фильм раньше.

Она сказала мне, что никогда раньше не была в Лондоне.

В русском языке глаголам в Past Perfect соответствуют глаголы в прошедшем времени как совершенного, так и несовершенного вида.

# ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

## 1. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

[5:] — course, board, a'broad, re'cording, be'cause

[ju:] - 'during, 'tutor, tu'ition, 'student

[a:] - work, con'cern, con'cerning, uni'versity

[ai] - 'science, 'final, de'sign, ap'plied

[sk] - school, 'scholarship

[ ] - 'special, ,speciali'zation, 'specialist, ,speci'ality

## б) Прочитайте следующие слова. Запомните их произношение:

laboratory [lə'bərət(ə)ri], traversing ['trævə(:)siŋ], Nottingham ['nɔtiŋəm], university [,ju:ni'və:siti], tacheometry [,tæki'ɔmətri], examination [ig,zæmi'neiʃn], graduation [,grædju:'eiʃn]

в) Прочитайте нары слов, обращая винмание на изменение ударения в них:

ex'periment — ex,peri'mental; 'tutor — tu'torial; as'tronomy — ,astro'nomical; ,tache'ometry — ,tacheo'metric

 Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь заномнить их.

accurate ['ækjurit] а точный, правильный; accuracy n точность archive ['c:kaiv] n архив

attend [ə'tend] v посещать (лекции, практические занятия, собрания)

comprehensive [,kompri'hensiv] а всесторонний, исчерпываюший

совсетв [kən'sə:n] v касаться, относиться; иметь отношение к чему-л.; n дело, отношение; важность; **concerning** *prep* относительно, касательно

consider [kən'sidə] v рассматривать; считать; considerable a значительный, важный; consideration n рассмотрение; обсуждение

draw [dro:] (drew [dru:], drawn [dro:n]) v эд. чертить, рисовать; draw the conclusion делать вывод; syn come to the conclusion

employ [Im'plot] v применять, использовать; предоставлять (ра-

боту); syn use, utilize, apply; employment n служба; занятис; применение, использование

familiarize [fə'miljəraiz] v знакомить; осваивать

fundamental [,fʌndə'mentl] n pl основы (наук)

levelling ['levlin] п нивелирование, сглаживание (различий); выравнивание

**number** ['nʌmbə] *n* число, количество, большое количество; (порядковый) номер, ряд

observe [əb'zə:v] v наблюдать, следить (за чем-л.), соблюдать (правило, обычаи)

**obtain** [əb'tein] v получать; достигать; добывать; syn get, receive

present [pri'zent] v преподносить, дарить; подавать, представлять; presentation n изложение; предъявление

proximity [prok'sImiti] n близость, соседство; in proximity to поблизости, вблизи от (чего-л.)

require [гі'kwaiə] v требовать; syn call for; demand; meet the requirements удовлетворять требованиям

traversing ['trævə(:)sɪŋ] n горизонтальная съемка

to keep in close touch with поддерживать связь с to touch upon (on) затрагивать, касаться вкратце (вопроса)

- 3. a) Переведите прилагательные с суффиксом -ic: automatic, electronic, scientific, academic
- б) Заполните пропуски прилагательными, образованными от выделенных существительных:
- 1. It is obvious that Great Britain, like every other country in modern internationally-organised **economy**, ought to concentrate on the industrial and ... activities.
- 2. Scientists and engineers work in the field of science and engineering. They carry out research and solve important ... problems in computer engineering.
- 3. Engineers pay much attention to **electronics** now. They design and build new ... machines which they use in industry.
- 4. Automation helps people work more easily. The development of ... control systems is the main aim of modern engineering.

# 4. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

large-scale open-cast mining
traversing and levelling
accurate scientific observations
fundamentals of engineering science
drawing classes
the equipment available for carrying
out surveying
to obtain good results

ore mining
in proximity to coal-fields
mining departments of universities
graduation paper
a wide range of activity
to attend lectures and seminars
to keep in close touch with mining
enterprises

 Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

the problem concerning mining education; special colleges; special institutes; geologists and mining engineers; mechanical and electrical engineers; social sciences; specialized subjects; the type of specialization and qualification; course; logical conclusions; experimental methods of work; the characteristics of engineering materials; two types of laboratories; the final years; tacheometric and astronomical surveying; to guarantee employment for the graduates from colleges and universities; financial and other resources

# а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов;

- 1. electrical engineering
- 2. applied sciences
- 3. postgraduates
- 4. in proximity to mines
- 5. to draw logical conclusions
- 6. to obtain good results
- 7. to record observations

- а) аспиранты
- б) получать хорошие результаты
- в) записывать наблюдения
- г) электротехника
- д) прикладные науки
- е) поблизости от шахт
- ж) делать логические выводы

# б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов:

- 1. позволять (делать возможным)
- 2. проводить исследования
- 3. с другой стороны
- 4. посещать лекции и практические занятия
- 5. нивелирование и горизонтальная съемка
- 6. поддерживать контакт с
- 7. как в лаборатории, так и в полевых условиях
- 8. научный локлад

- a) on the other hand
- б) to keep in touch with
- B) to make it possible
- r) to carry out research (to be engaged in research)
- д) scientific report
- e) both in the laboratory and in the field
- ж) levelling and traversing
- 3) to attend lectures and classes

# 7. Подберите к глаголам из синска A соответствующие существительные из списка Б. Переведите полученные сочетания слов:

- A. to attend
  - to introduce
    - to train
    - to get
    - to draw
    - to present

B. postgraduates scholarshi p

lectures and classes

fundamentals of engineering

specialists

higher education

to deal with to solve to carry out to depend upon conclusions
new methods
scientific reports
problems
research
courses in engineering

8. Прочитайте текст А. Назовите предложения, характеризующие систему обучения на горном факультете Ноттингемского университета:

### TEKCT A

# Mining Education in Great Britain

In Great Britain the students get mining education at special colleges and at mining departments of universities.

For example, the Mining Department at the University of Nottingham ranks as one of the foremost teaching and research mining schools in Great Britain. The students come to the University from all parts of the country and from abroad. The close proximity of Nottingham to mines extracting coal and different metals makes it possible for the University to keep in close touch with new achievements in mining.

The aim of training at the University is to give the student an understanding of applied science based on lectures, tutorial system,¹ laboratory work and design classes. The laboratory work trains the student in accurate recording of observations, drawing of logical conclusions and presentation of scientific reports. Besides, it gives the student an understanding of experimental methods and familiarizes him (or her) with the characteristics of engineering materials, equipment and machines.

At Nottingham there are two types of laboratories, general and specialized. General laboratories deal with the fundamentals of engineering science and specialized ones<sup>2</sup> study the more specialized problems in different branches of engineering.

During the final two years of his course the student gets a comprehensive training in surveying. Practical work both in the field and in drawing classes forms an important part of this course. Besides, the students have practical work in survey camps during two weeks. The equipment available for carrying out traversing, levelling, tacheometric and astronomical surveying is of the latest design.

The practical and laboratory work throughout the three or four vears of study forms a very important part of the course, so the stu-

dents obtain the required standard in their laboratory course work before they graduate.

British educational system is fee-paying.<sup>3</sup> The annual fee includes registration, tuition, examination, graduation and, in the case of full-time students, membership of the Union of Students.

Students from all over the world (nearly 100 countries) study at the University of Nottingham. For many years the University has had a thriving community of international students.

The University pays much attention to learning foreign languages. For individual study there is a 16-place self-access tape library<sup>4</sup> with a tape archive of 3,000 tapes in 30 languages. There are also 16 video work stations where the students play back video tapes or watch TV broadcasts in a variety of languages.

### пояснения к тексту

- 1. tutorial system система прикрепления студентов к отдельным консультантам, принятая в университетах Великобритании
- 2. опет замещает существительное sciences во избежание его повторения
- 3. fee-paying зд. платная (система образования)
- 4. self-access tape library фонотека со свободным доступом к кассетам

В цепочках из нескольких существительных, очень характерных для английского языка, последнее слово является главным, определяемым, а все стоящие перед ним существительные (иногда среди них могут быть и прилагательные) являются его определениями. Ср. также:

iaboratory work — лабораторная работа design classes — классы (занятия) по черчению TV broadcasts — телевизионные передачи

## **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- Определите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста.
   Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. In Great Britain the students can get mining education only at special colleges.
  - 2. The training at universities is based on tutorial system.
- 3. The laboratory work familiarizes the student with modern equipment.
- 4. There are three types of laboratories at the University of Nottingham.
- 5. When the students study surveying, they have practical work both in the field and in drawing classes.
  - 6. The students from abroad don't study at Nottingham.

### 10. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. Where can one get mining education in Great Britain?
- 2. Is the Mining Department at the University of Nottingham one of the foremost research mining schools in Great Britain?
- 3. What makes it possible for the University to keep in close touch with the achievements in mining?
  - 4. What are the students supposed to do in the laboratories?
- 5. Will the students have practical work in survey camps or in the laboratories?
  - 6. What do the students use surveying equipment for?
- 7. What can you say about studying foreign languages at the University?

•
<ul> <li>11. Выпините из текста предложения, содержащие</li> <li>а) конструкцию there is/are,</li> <li>б) сказуемое, выраженное временем Present Perfect.</li> </ul>
12. Употребите форму Present Perfect глагола, данного в скобках.
1 you (to be) to Great Britain?
2 you (to finish) your test?
3 all the students (to prepare) the text for re-
telling?
4. He just (to graduate) from the mining de-
partment of the university.
5. He says he never (to see) the girl before.
6. Unfortunately, I (not to see) the film.
7 you ever (to travel) to the USA?
8. She says she (to change) her mind.
9. They say they never (to be) at this place
before.
10. Nobody (to see) him today.
13. Закончите следующие разделительные вопросы.
1. He hasn't come back yet, ?
<ol> <li>He hasn't come back yet,?</li> <li>She has travelled a lot,?</li> </ol>
3. You haven't been to the university today,?
4. I have told you about my new job,?
5. You haven't seen our tape library,?
6. They haven't left yet,?
7. You have learned the poem by heart,?
8 Von haven't weited for me long 2

14. допожиле воп	pock i reactly is making discrim.	
1. Where	the students in Great B	ritain
mining education? (		
2. What	it possible for the Unive	rsity to keep in
close touch with nev	v achievements in mining? (to m	ıake) '
3. What	the aim of training at the	Mining Univer-
sity? (to be)		_
4. How many t	types of laboratories	at Nottingham?
(there + be)		_
5. What	general laboratories	with? (to
deal)		
6. What	specialized laboratories	? (to
study)	<del></del> -	
7. Where	the students	their practical
work? (to have)		-
8 B	ritish educational system fee-pay	ying? (to be)
	the annual fee?	

15. Изучите таблицу, иллюстрирующую многозначность слова *оне (ones)*. Обратите внимание на способы перевода предложений с оне на русский язык. Затем прочтите и переведите предложения. Назовите номера предложений, в которых опе выступает как заместитель ранее упомянутого предложения.

Числительное «один»	Формальное подлежащее (имеет форму притяжательного падежа опе's)	Заменитель ранее упомянутого <i>существительного</i> (имеет форму мн. числа — <b>олеs</b> )
one student — один студент	One can see Можно видеть	Modern machines are better than the old <i>ones</i> . Новые машины
many students — много студентов	One must say Нужно сказать	лучше старых. This book is better than the <i>one</i> you gave me.
`	One must do one's duty. Нужно выполнять свой долг.	Эта книга лучше, чем та, которую ты мне дал.

- 1. In Great Britain one can get higher education at colleges and universities.
- 2. Oxford, famous for its oldest university in Britain, is now one of the most important centres of the motor-car industry.
- 3. The speaker touched upon only *one* important problem the state of higher education in Great Britain.
- 4. The training of mining engineers and geologists includes a comprehensive study of general subjects as well as special *ones*.
- 5. In the laboratory students learn to design new collieries and quarries, to build modern mines, dressing plants and reconstruct old ones.

Б

### ГРАММАТИКА

# Модальные глаголы и их эквиваленты

Модальные глаголы выражают не действия, а отношение говорящего к действиям или состояниям. Главные глаголы этой группы: can, may, must, shall, should, will, would, ought to.

Иногда эти глаголы называют недостаточными, так как они:

- а) не имеют форм инфинитива, причастия, повелительного наклонения;
- б) имеют только формы настоящего времени, а некоторые форму прошедшего времени (например, can could; may might);
- в) образуют вопросительную и отрицательную формы без вспомогательного глагола **do** (путем постановки модального глагола перед подлежащим и добавления отрицания **not** после них): **May** I go? He **cannot** work.
- r) не изменяются ни по лицам, ни по числам (в настоящем времени в 3 л. ед. числа не имеют окончания -s): he can read, she may go.

Взамен недостающих форм глагола **can** употребляется конструкция **to be able to**.

To have to употребляется вместо must и to be allowed to — вместо may. (См. примеры в таблице.)

	,		
Формы мо- дальных гла- голов и их эквиваленты	Значение	Пример	Перевод
1	2	3	4
can — could (эквивалент - to be able to)	а) Физическая, умственная способность или возможность б) Разрешение,	He can/could operate the cutter-loader. He will be able to operate cutter-loader. Can/Could I borrow	Он может (мог) управлять комбайном. Он сможет (сумеет) управлять комбайном. Можно взять вашу
	просьба о помощи (с <b>could</b> — более вежливая)	your pen, please?  — Certainly.	ручку <sup>9</sup> — Конечно.
may — might (эквивалент - to be allowed to)	а) Разрешение (бо- лее формальное, чем с сав)	May I ask you a question? You may take the article. He will be allowed to stay.	Можно мне задать вам вопрос? Вы можете взять статью. Ему разрешат остаться здесь.
	б) Вероятность, предположение (с might — меньшая уверенность)	He may come here.  It might rain.	Он, может быть, при- дет сюда. Возможно (может быть, не исключено, что), будет дождь.
must (эквиваленты to have to, to be to)	а) Долженствова- ние, необходимость (нет другого выбо- ра)	They must come today. This must be done at once.	Они должны прийти сегодня. Это <i>нужно</i> (необходимо) сделать сразу.
	б) Запрещение ( <b>not</b> )	He mustn't go there.	Он <i>не должен</i> (ему нельзя) туда идти
have to (had to, shall/will/ 'Il have to)/ have got to	необходимость, долженствование, вытекающие из определенных	They have to apply this system in working thick seams.	Им необходимо при- менять эту систему при разработке мощ- ных пластов.
(в нефор- мальной речи)	обстоятельств	They had to replace old equipment.  We have got to hurry.	Им пришлось заменить старое оборудование. Нам нужно торопиться.
to be to	необходимость в силу договорен- ности, приказа, плана, предписа- ния и т.д.	He has got to go. The coal industry is to increase its output. He was to come at 9.	Ему придется уйти. Угольная промышленность должна увеличить добычу. Он должен был (в силу договоренности и т.д.) прийти в 9 часов.

Продолжение	табл
-------------	------

1	2	3	4
will, would	а) Вежливая просьба о помощи, побуждение	Will you say it again? Would you mind opening the window?	Повтори, пожалуйста.  Будьте добры, открой- те окно.
	б) Повторность действия, совер- шавшегося в прошлом (would)	In the evening the old miner would tell his sons about his job.	Вечером старый шах- тер, бывало, рассказы- вал сыновьям о своей работе
would like	Желание, нежелание	Would you like to go in? I tried to open the door, but it wouldn't open.	Хотите зайти? (Вы хотели бы зайти?) Я попытался открыть дверь, но она не поддавалась.
would (= 'd) rather	предпочтение	I'd rather do it.	Я бы предпочел сде- лять это.
shall	обещание, приказание, угроза	You shall go there.	Вы пойдете туда! (т.е. Я вам приказы- ваю.)
should	совет, убеждение	You <b>should</b> help your friends.	Вам <i>следует</i> (необхо- димо, нужно) помочь своим друзьям.
ought to	долженствование, необходимость, вытекающие из моральных соображений	You ought to know safety rules.	Вы <i>должны</i> (Вам следует) знать правила безопасности.

# ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

# 16. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова и запомните их произношение.

[A]	[ju:]	[ɔ:]	[c]	{a:}
'number in'struction study in'dustrial just	uni'versity, insti'tution 'student tu'torial tu'ition	a'ward course au'thority im'portance board hall	,qualifi 'cation 'college 'confer 'quarry ac,commo 'dation al 'lot	,arts 'Cardiff 'largest de'partment staff

б) Протранскрибируйте следующие слова и назовите их значения.

Образец: term - [tə:m] - семестр

confer	<b>–</b> [	] -	
graduates	<b>— [</b>	] -	
extractive	- [	] -	
entry	- [	] =	
apply	- [	]	
management	- [	j - '	<u> </u>
staff	-[	j '	
quarrying	- [	j - '	
excavation	- [	j - '	
admission	<b>–</b> [	j - '	
minimum	- [	j - j	

## Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.

advance [əd'vɑ:n:s] 'n прогресс, успех; продвижение вперед; уделать успехи, развиваться, продвигаться вперед; advanced courses курсы по расширенной программе

authority [o: '9oriti] п администрация; начальство

differ ['difə] v (from) отличаться (от); difference n различие; разница; different a различный; syn various

ехсачаte ['ekskəveit] у добывать (угаль); вырабатывать полезное ископаемое открытым способом; вынимать (групт); ехсачаtion п открытая разработка карьером; разрез, карьер; surface ехсачаtion открытая разработка; syn open-cast (opencast)

experience [iks'piəriəns] n жизненный опыт; опыт работы; стаж found [faund] v основывать; syn establish, set up; foundation n основание; учреждение; основа; lay the foundation положить начало чему-л., заложить основу чего-л.

manage ['mænid3] v управлять, заведовать, справляться, уметь обращаться; management n управление, заведование; правление, дирекция; management studies наука об управлении

mean [mi:n] (meant) v значить, иметь значение; подразумевать; намереваться, иметь в виду; means n, pl средства; meaning n значение; by means of посредством (чего-л.)

metalliferous [,metə'lif(ə)rəs] a содержащий металл, рудоносный

preliminary [pri'lim(i)nəri] а предварительный; preliminary course подготовительные курсы

realize ['riəlaiz] v представлять себе; понимать (во всех деталях); syn understand

recognize ['rekə@naiz] v признавать; узнавать

work out ['wə:k 'aut] v разрабатывать (план); решать задачу

to be of interest представлять интерес to give instruction преподавать; syn to teach in addition (to) к тому же, кроме того such as такой, как

- 18. Переведите предложення, обращая внимание на перевод прилагательных с суффиксом -оиз:
- 1. The department deals with the whole range of extractive industries such as coal and **metalliferous** mining.
- 2. The famous universities of Oxford and Cambridge are the oldest in Great Britain dating from 1249 and 1284. They are recognized centres of education.
- 3. The graduates from the Mining Engineering Department work in various fields of the country's economy.

### 19. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

the college authority
a wide range of subjects/interests
means of production
the preliminary course of study
mine surveying
difficult conditions of work
graduation paper
extractive industries
average coal output
to save fuel resources

industrially experienced engineers a new meaning of the word full-time and part-time education oil technology surface excavation management system advanced courses powder metal to improve knowledge that is why

- 20. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:
- a technical college; a preliminary course; professional training; a good tradition; a technically advanced profession; industrially experienced engineers; highly qualified specialists; the organization of the academic year; three-term system; examination tests; to recommend for entry to the university; to take examinations; to interview all the candidates; to select candidates
- 21. Прочитайте текст Б. Обратите внимание на особенности системы образования в университетах Великобритании:

## ТЕКСТ Б

# Mining Education in Great Britain

(continued)

At present in Great Britain there are a number of universities and colleges which give instruction in mechanical engineering, mining, metallurgy, etc. These institutions provide full-time and part-time education. It should be noted that technical colleges confer diplomas on college graduates.

A university graduate leaves with the degree of Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science,<sup>2</sup> which is an academic qualification awarded by universities.

For example, the University in Cardiff has become one of the largest in Wales. It is one of the four colleges which together with the Welsh National School of Medicine form the University of Wales. There is the Mining Engineering Department in the University of Wales. The Department deals with the whole range of extractive industries such as coal and metalliferous mining, quarrying and oil technology.

After graduating from the college a student can be recommended for entry to the university by a college authority and he can apply for admission to the university.<sup>3</sup>

At the Mining Department students may take several courses such as geology, mining engineering, mine surveying, quarrying, management studies and others. It has become a tradition that the courses are based on an intensive tutorial system. It means that students are allotted<sup>4</sup> to members of the teaching staff<sup>3</sup> for individual tuition separately in mining, in quarrying and in mine surveying. The system is founded on that<sup>6</sup> of the older universities of Great Britain.

At the Department of Mining Engineering of the Newcastle University mining has now become a technically advanced profession. The Department of Mining Engineering trains industrially experienced engineers through various advanced courses in rock mechanics and surface excavation. For many years the Mining Engineering Department at Newcastle has recognized the need for highly-qualified engineers and realized that the courses in rock mechanics and surface excavation are of great importance for mining engineers.

At the University a student studies for three or four years. The organization of the academic year is based on a three-term system which usually runs from about the beginning of October to the middle of December, from the middle of January to the end of March and from the middle of April to the end of June or the beginning of July.

Students course is designed on a modular basis. Modules are self-contained 'units' of study, which are taught and assessed independently of each other. When a student passes a module, he (she) gains a credit. All modules carry a number of credits. At the end of the term, the number of credits a student gets, determines the award he (she) receives. Each module is continuously assessed by coursework and/or end-of-term examinations.

Admission to the British universities is by examination and selection. The minimum age for admission to the four-year course is normally 18 years. Departments usually interview all the candidates. The aim of the interview is to select better candidates.

Just over half of all university students live in colleges, halls of residence, or other accommodation provided by their university, another third lives in lodgings or privately rented accommodation; and the rest live at home.

#### пояснения к тексту

- 1. confer diplomas присуждают дипломы
- Bachelor of Arts бакалавр искусств; Bachelor of Science бакалавр наук
   ученые степени, присуждаемые в Англии и США оканчивающим университет
- 3. to apply for admission to the university (college) подать заявление о приеме в университет (колледж)
- 4. are allotted распределяются
- 5. teaching staff профессорско-преподавательский состав
- 6. ... on that of the older universities на системе (that слово, замещающее "the system") более старых университетов

## **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 22. Определите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. At present there are about a hundred technical institutions in Great Britain.
  - 2. It should be noted that British colleges confer degrees.
- 3. As a rule a college authority recommends the graduates for entry to the university.
- 4. At the Mining Engineering Department of the University of Wales the students study only metalliferous mining.
- 5. At the Mining Engineering Department the courses are based on an intensive tutorial system.
- 6. The Mining Engineering Department at the Newcastle University has recognized the importance of teaching rock mechanics and surface excavation (open-cast mining).

# 23. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. Are there many technical institutions in Great Britain?
- 2. What is the difference between colleges and universities?

- 3. Is the Mining Engineering Department the only one in the University of Wales?
- 4. Does the Mining Engineering Department deal only with metalliferous mining?
- 5. Can a student enter the university after he has graduated from the college?
- 6. What courses are of special importance for mining engineers?
- 7. What do you know about the organization of the academic year at British universities?
  - 8. When do the students take their examinations?

# 24. а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов:

- 1. the mining engineering department
- 2. the college authority
- 3. advanced courses
- 4. metalliferous deposits
- 5. to encourage students
- 6. to meet the requirements of the University
- 7 means of production
- 8. management studies
- 9. surface excavation
- 10. an experienced engineer

- а) курсы по расширенной программе
- б) рудоносные отложения
- в) средства производства
- г) горный факультет
- д) открытые горные работы
- е) опытный инженер
- ж) администрация колледжа
- з) поощрять студентов
- и) отвечать требованиям университета
- к) наука об управлении

# б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:

- 1. зависеть от условий
- 2. значить, означать
- 3. признать необходимость (чего-л.)
- 4. ежегодная производительность (*шахты*)
- 5. начальник шахты
- 6. добывающая промышленность
- 7. представлять особую важность
- 8. механика горных пород
- 9. единственный карьер
- 10. основывать факультет (школу, систему и т.д.)

- a) the manager of a colliery (mine)
- 6) rock mechanics
- B) the only quarry
- r) annual output
- д) to be of particular importance
- e) to depend upon the conditions
- ж) to found a department (school, system, etc.)
- 3) to recognize the need (of)
- и) to mean (meant)
- k) extractive industry

### 25. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, используя следующие слова:

## mean means meaning meant

- 1. Computer technique is one of the ... of modern planning and control.
- 2. By ... of computers and mathematical modelling it is possible to process a huge amount of information in a short period of time.
- 3. Britain is not rich in mineral resources. It ... that until recently coal was the only fuel available in the country.
- 4. What do you ... to do? Are you going to have your practical training at a mine or at an open-cast mine?
  - 5. You know that the word range has several ...s.

### 26. Подберите из списков А и Б близкие по значению слова.

<ul><li>B. a) to establish</li></ul>
δ) to combine
в) to realize
r) to get
д) to transform
e) to set up
ж) to require
3) to supply
и) branch
κ) to be made of
л) seam
м) opencast
н) surface mine

# 27. Переведите следующие предложения, обращая внимание на перевод слов only и the only:

- 1. Until the nineteenth century Oxford and Cambridge were the only two universities of England.
- 2. The colleges of Oxford and Cambridge provide instruction chiefly by means of lectures and they use *only* a tutorial method.
- 3. The Mining Engineering Department is the only one in the University of Wales.
  - 4. The University has only two types of laboratories.
- 5. At the Mining Engineering Department of the University of Newcastle it has become a tradition that the courses are based *only* on a tutorial system.
- 28. Изучите таблящу значений that (those) с примерами, затем переведите предложения, обращая внимание на многозначность слова:

TL-4	/shann)
THEFT	(those)

Указательное местоимение (that — ед.ч., those — мн.ч.)	Слово-замени- тель ранее упо- мянутых сущест- вительных (that — ед.ч., those — мн.ч.)	Относительное местоимение, вводит определительное придаточное предложение	Союз — вводит дополнительное придаточное предложение
Look at that man. — Посмотри на того человека. Look at those people. — Посмотри на тех людей.	The calorific power of coal is 2-4 times greater than that of wood.  — Теплотворная способность угля в 2-4 раза больше, чем дерева.	The letter that came in the morning is from my husband. — Письмо, которое пришло утром, от моего мужа.	She says that she did not receive this letter. — Oha сказала, что не получила этого письма.

- 1. It is known *that* the scientists have already done considerable work in the field of automatized systems of planning and control of underground operations. Their experience is very encouraging.
- 2. The calorific value of coal is 2-4 times greater than that of wood.
- 3. The equipment *that* the postgraduates have used for carrying out their experiments is of the latest design.
- 4. It was clear that computers could perform the work that man could not.
- 5. The geological conditions of Wales differ from those of Scotland.

# 29. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие предложения.

- Выберите из предлагаемых в скобках вариантов правильный перевод для глагола-сказуемого.
- 1. Today mining engineering has become a key industry on which the speed (скорость) of economic development depends. (а. становится, б. стало, в. станет)
- 2. Experience has helped the engineers to solve the problem of increasing coal output. (а. помог, б. поможет, в. помогает)
- 3. Research workers have developed an efficient method for mining bedded deposits. (a. разрабатывают, б. разработали, в. разрабатывается)

- 30. Назовите предложения, в которых глаголы-сказуемые употребляются в одной из форм группы Perfect. Переведите предложения:
- 1. They have provided the laboratory with the modern equipment for carrying out experiments.
  - 2. These engineers have graduated from the college.
- 3. The universities have advanced courses in rock mechanics and surface excavation.
- 4. Mechanization and automation of underground mines and opencasts have advanced greatly.
- 5. The research workers had made a lot of experiments before they received positive results.
- 6. N. had worked in the mine for many years before he became a research worker.

## 31. Составьте предложения из следующих слов:

- 1. much time, the students, in, spent, today, have, the laboratory
- 2. Moscow, for Great Britain, just, left, the scientist, has
- 3. already, his, he, finished, work, has, laboratory
- 4. never, the dressing plant, have, to, we, been
- 5. has, the institute, graduated from, she, not, yet

# 32. Прочитайте следующие предложения, определите временную форму глаголов-сказуемых. Переведите предложения.

- a) 1. The engineer has just graduated from the mining engineering department.
- 2. This year the college authority has introduced a new course in environmental protection.
  - 3. Have you ever been in the mine?
- 4. The group of researchers has not yet solved the problem of using a new method in their work.
- 5. Mining has now become a technically advanced branch of industry.
- 6)1. A group of experienced engineers began to design and construct a new, more powerful mining equipment for opencasts two years ago. This year they have finished their work. (The equipment is ready for use in industry.)
- 2. Some years ago coal was the only fuel available in Great Britain.
- B) Until recently Britain's heavy industry was mainly in the centre of England and in the London region. Such towns as Birming-

ham, Coventry and Sheffield produced heavy machinery, motorcars and other equipment. These old industrial centres have developed new branches of industry: electronics, radio, the chemical industry and others.

- 33. Найдите в тексте Б предложения, в которых глагол-сказуемое выражает законченное действие.
  - 34. Выполните задание по следующему образцу:

Образец: Say what the students have already done (to pass their examinations).

The students have already passed their examinations.

- 1) Say what the students (a group of students) have (has) already done (to pass examinations, to make experiments, to present a report, to write a graduation paper, to have practical work).
- 2) Say what the manager (the group of engineers, the authority) hasn't (haven't) done yet (to work out special methods, to design a new computer, to equip laboratories, to introduce automated systems of planning and control of underground operations, to provide the laboratory with necessary equipment).
- 3) Say what the students (the geologists, the manager, the college, the miners) did (did not do) not long ago, last year, two months ago, last week, etc. (to keep in close touch with industrial enterprises, to discover new deposits, to extract many tons of coal, to replace old equipment, to touch upon the problem of labour productivity, to attend lectures and classes).
- 35. Прочитайте предложения и определите, в каком из них следует употребить форму совершенного времени (The Perfect Tense). Переведите предложения, используя следующие слова и сочетания слов:

to graduate from; to carry out an experiment; to take a postgraduate course; the share of coal; to work out a problem; the number of postgraduates (postgraduate students); to increase; to decrease; to discover; the fuel balance

- 1. Они уже провели эксперимент.
- 2. Они провели эксперимент на прошлой неделе.
- 3. Этот молодой инженер закончил институт два года тому назал.
  - 4. В этом году он поступил в аспирантуру.
- 5. После того как геологи открыли природный газ, доля угля в топливном балансе района уменьшилась.

36. Суммируйте содержание текста Б, используя следующие выражения.

to provide full-time and part-time education; to confer diplomas; to take courses; to become a tradition; to take examinations; to interview the students; an intensive tutorial system; to train engineers; a three-term system

- 37. Побеседуйте по содержанию текста Б по образцу. Используйте разговорные формулы.
  - Образец: А.: Have you read anything about mining education in Great Britain?

B.: Yes, I have. I know that...

C.: I agree with you but I'd like to add...

D.: I see. Let me say about...

- 38. Найдите в тексте Б сказуемые, в состав которых входят модальные глаголы или их эквиваленты.
  - 39. Выполните задание по следующему образцу.

Obpaseu: Say how many subjects you had to take at the entrance examinations. → I had to take four subjects.

- Say 1) what subjects you had to take at your entrance examinations; 2) what subjects you are to study in your first year; 3) what specializations your institute offers; 4) what subjects the students must study if they take a course of underground technology; 5) what subjects you study regardless of your specialization.
- 40. Прочитайте следующий текст и озаглавьте его. В каждом предложении найдите группу «подлежащее сказуемое».

In Russia great attention is paid to engineering education. Much depends on today's students. They will be tomorrow's engineers, geologists, designers, economists, etc. They will have to cope with the tasks which the country will set before them. Today a student is to get a much greater amount of new information and this amount is growing all the time. Future specialists must acquire professional knowledge and skills and get modern methods of scientific research, advanced production technology, its organization and management. Engineers of a new type cannot be trained apart from modern production, science and technology.

They are to take an active part in accelerating scientific and technological progress.

B

41. Прочитайте текст В без словаря. Кратко суммируйте его содержание по-русски.

### TEKCT B

In the USA the basic aim of technical higher education is the training of qualified specialists in a selected field of technology.

In the field of technical education they have a three-part programme:

1) The University programme for engineers and scientists. 2) The technical institute programme for engineering technicians. 3) The vocational trade programme.

The students can get mining education at special colleges and at mining departments of universities. For example, one of the oldest mining schools in the USA is the Colorado School of Mines. Early mining operations in the Territory of Colorado emphasized the need for a college to train mining engineers.

The Colorado School of Mines is situated in the mineral-producing area of the Rocky Mountains. The area is rich in non-ferrous metals such as molybdenum, vanadium, zinc and other deposits. Besides, Colorado has processing (dressing) plants, petroleum refineries and steel plants. Many coal mines are in operation throughout the area.

The field of study includes earth sciences (geology, geochemistry, geophysics and others) and engineering. The students may specialize in petrology, mineral deposits, mining engineering and other disciplines.

Field work is an important part of training. All students take part in a summer field course during their undergraduate programme. Geology laboratories are available within the Department of Geology for study and research.

The mining-engineering students study the basic sciences, principles and technologies of mineral exploration, underground and surface operations, rock mechanics, mine ventilation, surveying, mine safety and operating research. The Department operates the experimental mine. It is a large and well-equipped laboratory for teaching and research in mining operations.

The education is fee-paying. The School collects fees at the beginning of each semester. Semester fees include fees for health service, athletics, student centre and others. A student will not be allowed to take final examinations or be graduated if he (or she) has debts (долги) to the college.

During their course of training the students may visit surface and underground mines, oil fields, dressing plants and regions of geological interest.

A study of current curricula shows that the average American engineer receives only 10% of geology and 25% of mining in his (or her) undergraduate education in mining. As a rule, mining engineering programmes include: Liberal arts — 20%; Basic sciences — 25%; General engineering — 20%; Geology — 10%; Mining — 25%.

- 42. а) Выразите основную мысль каждого абзаца текста В одним или двумя предложениями.
- б) Найдите в тексте В абзацы, в которых говорится о характерных особенностях системы высшего образования в США.
- 43. Определите, какой из трех заголовков наиболее соответствует содержанию текста В.
  - 1. Education in the USA.
  - 2. Higher Education in the USA.
  - 3. Technical Higher Education in the USA.
- 44. Составьте 10 специальных и 5 разделительных вопросов к тексту В. (Поминте, что разделительные вопросы характерны для устной речи.)

# **ДИСКУССИЯ**

# Проблемы горного образования в России и за рубежом

Прочитайте текст «Mining Schools», подготовьтесь к обсуждению затронутых в нем проблем.

### Слова для понимания текста:

to abandon — отказаться от, оставлять

ассоинтансу [э'kauntənsi] — бухгалтерское дело

award — присуждение (степени)

fame — слава

gain experience [iks'piəriəns] —
приобретать опыт

to hold a higher regard — быть
более высокого мнения

maturity [mə'tjuəriti] — эрелость

mill — обогатительная фабрика

recruitment [rī'kru:tmənt] —
набор

reward — вознаграждение staff — штат служащих, персонал stock broking — фондовые операции supervisor ['sju:pəvaizə] — контролер, надсмотрщик to tend — иметь склонность, тенденцию trainee [trei'ni:] — стажер, практикант to waste — расточать wealth [e] — богатство

# **Mining Schools**

As is known young people who are in their last year at school are planning the next stage in their education. The variety of courses at universities and colleges is extensive but many young people don't have any clear idea about the career they wish to follow. Those who are primarily motivated by wealth tend to choose law, business administration, economics or accountancy. Those interested in fame may choose the arts, the stage, or the media.

Except perhaps in the countries with successful manufacturing industries such as Germany and Japan, where engineers tend to be held in higher regard, a career in engineering is not often recommended with any enthusiasm by school teachers, politicians, TV, newspapers or teenage magazines. Those influencing young people tend to be pop singers, TV actors and sports stars.

It is no wonder, therefore, that many engineering degree courses find it difficult to attract students, with the result that young graduate engineers in many fields are in short supply worldwide. Courses in mineral resource engineering — mining geology, rock mechanics, mining, quarrying, mineral processing, and petroleum engineering have special difficulties in recruitment.

However, this is only part of the story. After graduation and the award of a degree, there is a strong wish to abandon the subject matter of the course and enter a career offering more reward: commerce, banking, accountancy or stock brocking. This causes disappointment to the academy staff who wasted all their efforts to give useful practical knowledge to the students. There is one more barrier to recruitment into the mining industry where management trainees should spend several years of practical training underground or in the mill. Modern mining and processing machinery, computer controlled and high in output capacity, cannot and should not be operated by young management trainees: nowadays operators are often highly skilled and from their ranks should come the line supervisors. Management trainees, after a brief period to acquire general knowledge about the operation, would be better trained by acting as assistants to managers and consulting engineers, and gain experience in planning surveying and ventilation departments, all areas where knowledge learned at a mining school can be utilized to good advantage.

It should be noted that there are mineral engineering courses which must provide a wide and general tuition, covering not only

mineral extraction and processing methods but also economics, business administration, computer studies, communication skills and basic civil and mechanical engineering which are vital for important career development to senior ranks.

Выучите фразы, которые используются для выражения согласия или несогласия. Они вам понадобятся при проведении дискуссии.

Agreement		
Strong	Neutral	
I'm in complete agreement. I quite agree. I couldn't agree more. Yes, definitely. Exactly. Precisely.	I agree. You're right there. I think you're right. Yes, and That's true. That's right.	

Disagreement		
Strong	Neutral	
I disagree completely.	I don't agree.	
That's out of the question.	That's not how I see it.	
On the contrary.	I wouldn't say that.	
Of course not.	I think you are wrong.	
That's ridiculous! (Нелепо!)	I disagree.	

Выскажите свое мнение по проблемам высшего образования, дав ответы на следующие вопросы. Используйте разговорные формулы, приведенные выше.

- 1. Is it easy to decide what career to choose in the last year at school? What helps make your choice?
- 2. There are different kinds of higher schools in our country and abroad. What kinds of schools do young people prefer to study in? Why?
- 3. It goes without saying that our higher school system could be reorganized. How do you think it can be done? (To have highly educated and trained teachers' staff; to provide wide and general tuition, economics, business, administration, computer studies, communication skills; to supply colleges and universities with modern technical equipment; to choose subjects to one's interests, abilities; to get more practical work; to carry out research, etc.)

- 4. Multistaged system of education is popular in many countries of the world. Is it popular in Russia? What appeals to you in this system?
- 5. The status of engineers in society is not high, is it? Why? What's your view on the state of education for the mineral industry engineers?
- 6. Highly educated people do much for their country, don't they? What helps (to) make a person educated? Why do you think it is important that everyone should be educated?

# UNIT 3 Outstanding Russian Scientists in Geology and Mining

А. Грамматика.

1. Продолженные времена (Continuous Tenses)

2. Страдательный залог (The Passive Voice)

Текст А.

A.M. Terpigorev (1873-1959)

Б. Грамматика.

Числительные

Текст Б.

A.P. Karpinsky (1847-1936)

В. Текст В.

Конференция. Выдающиеся ученые в горном деле Кроссворд (Crossword)

# A

## **ГРАММАТИКА**

# 1. Продолженные времена (Continuous Tenses)

Общая формула Present, Past и Future Continuous такова:

to be + ing-форма смыслового глагола в соответствующем (причастие настоящего времени) времени

Обратите внимание на то, что спрягается только глагол to be (Present — am, is, are; Past — was, were; Future — shall/will/'ll be), основной же глагол в ing-форме не изменяется. Времена этой группы выражают незаконченное действие или процесс, длящиеся в определенный момент в настоящем, прошедшем или будущем.

# НАСТОЯЩЕЕ ПРОДОЛЖЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE)

am is + ing-форма (причастие настоящего времени)

Время Present Continuous употребляется для обозначения незаконченного действия, которое:

- а) происходит в момент речи или
- б) в настоящее время, хотя и не в момент речи или
- в) с always для обозначения часто повторяющегося действия.

a) What are the student

writing?

Are they translating

a text?

Yes, they are.

(No, they are not/aren't.

They are writing a test.)

б) I'm reading an

interesting novel now.

Что пишут студенты?

Они переводят текст?

Да.

(Нет.

Они пишут контрольную.)

Сейчас я читаю

интересный роман

(но не в данный момент).

в) He's always studying. Он все время занимается.

Это время очень характерно для разговорной речи и иногда обозначает действие, намеченное на будущее:

I'm leaving next Sunday.

Я уезжаю в следующее воскресенье.

# ПРОШЕДШЕЕ ПРОДОЛЖЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE)

was were }+ ing-ф

ing-форма (причастие настоящего времени)

Прошедшее продолженное время употребляется для выражения незаконченного действия, начавшегося до определенного момента в прошлом и все еще продолжающегося в этот момент. Этот момент может быть выражен:

1) точным указанием времени: at five o'clock, yesterday, at that time, the whole day, all day long и др.

At 8 o'clock they were having breakfast.

В 8 часов они завтракали.

2) другим действием, выраженным глаголом в простом прошедшем времени:

We arrived late, and they were already sleeping.

Мы приехали поздно, и они уже спали.

Без обозначения времени Past Continuous описывает развивающееся действие:

It was getting darker.

Становилось темнее.

# БУДУЩЕЕ ПРОДОЛЖЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE)

Это время обозначает продолженное действие в будущем. Время действия может быть указано, но это не обязательно.

shall/will/'ll be	+ <i>ing</i> -форма		
Next week we'll be revising	На следующей неделе мы бу-		
for our exam.	дем готовиться к экзамену.		
He won't be helping us.	Он нам не будет помогать.		

Глаголы feel, hear, see (кроме значения «провожать»), look, seem, like, love, want, believe, know и некоторые другие не имеют форм Continuous.

# 2. Страдательный залог (The Passive Voice)

Формы страдательного залога показывают, что лицо или предмет, обозначаемые сказуемым предложения, испытывают на себе действие или являются объектом действия, но не производят его сами. (Ср. в русском языке: Книга написана совсем недавно. Дом будет построен в конце года и т.д.)

Все времена активного залога, изученные вами ранее, имеют соответствующие формы страдательного залога:

The play was written by Chekhov.
 The road is being repaired.
 Пьеса была написана Чеховым.
 Дорогу ремонтируют.

3. The car hasn't been washed. Mamuha he nombra.

В приведенных примерах сказуемое выражено глаголом: 1) в Past Indefinite Passive, 2) в Present Continuous Passive, 3) в Present Perfect Passive).

Временные формы страдательного залога образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола to be в соответствующем времени и причастия прошедшего времени смыслового глагола.

be + причастие прошедшего времени (Past Participle)

При спряжении глагола в страдательном залоге изменяется только глагол to be, смысловой же глагол во всех временных формах употребляется в форме причастия прошедшего времени. Ср.:

constructed (built) The mine

На русский язык глаголы в страдательном залоге могут переволиться:

1. Глаголами в страдательном залоге: глагол быть (был, будет) и краткая форма страдательного причастия:

The engineer was invited to the conference.

Инженер был приглашен на конференцию.

2. Возвратными глаголами на -ся:

structed.

The mine will be recon- Шахта будет реконструироваться.

3. Неопределенно-личным предложением (подлежащее в переводе отсутствует; сказуемое выражено глаголом в 3-м л. мн, числа действительного залога):

cutter-loader.

They were shown a new Им показали новый горный комбайн

Если в предложении указано, кем (или чем) произведено действие, то употребляется предложный оборот с предлогами by или with, которые переводятся: с, с помощью, посредством или дополнением в творительном падеже без предлога.

The delegation of the miners was met at the station by a group of students. Underground mines and opencasts are equipped with new machines.

Делегация шахтеров была встречена на станции группой студентов. Шахты и рудники оборудованы новыми машинами.

## ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

- 1. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:
- [æ] flat, 'manager, 'practical, me'chanics, 'graduate, 'capital
- [e] bed, 'bedded, 'measure, de'fend, 'pressure, 'deputy, dealt, head
- [5:] all, score, a'ward, 'order, born
- [i:] 'even, seam, de 'gree, 'teacher
- [a:] hard, pass, class, draft, charge
- [u:] choose, soon, too, food
- б) Прочитайте следующие слова и запомните их произношение:

academician [ə,kædə'mıʃ(ə)n], diploma [dıp'loumə], elementary [,elı'mentərı], senior ['si:njə], honour ['onə], deputy ['depjutı]

- Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.
- choose [tʃuːz] (chose [tʃouz], chosen ['tʃouzn]) ν выбирать; choice n выбор
- collect [kə'lekt] v собирать, коллекционировать
- dangerous ['deɪndʒərəs] а опасный deposit [dɪ'pɔzit] n месторождение, залежь; bedded deposits пластовые месторождения
- describe [dis'kraib] v описывать, изображать; description [di'skripfən] n описание; descriptive a описательный
- facility [fə'sɪlɪtɪ] n (pl facilities) средства; возможности; оборудование; устройства
- fire damp ['faɪədæmp] n рудничный газ, метан
- harm [ho:m] n вред; v вредить; harm- $ful \ a$  вредный

- relate [ri'leit]  $\nu$  относиться, иметь отношение
- safety ['seifti] п безопасность; mine safety безопасность труда при горных работах; техника безопасности; safety measures меры безопасности; safe a безопасный; надежный
- seam [si:m] n пласт (угля); syn bed, layer; flat seam горизонтальный, пологопадающий пласт; inclined seam наклонный пласт; steep seam крутопадающий пласт; thick seam мощный пласт; thin seam тонкий пласт
- state [steit] *п* состояние; государство; штат; *а* государственный; *v* заявлять; констатировать; излагать
- success [sək'ses] n успех; удача; be a success иметь успех; successful a успешный
- to defend graduation paper (thesis) защищать дипломную работу (диссертацию)
- to pass an entrance examination сдать вступительный экзамен
- to get a higher education получить высшее образование
- to do one's best (one's utmost, all one can, everything in one's power) сделать все возможное, не жалеть сил
- to make contribution (to) вносить вклад в (науку, технику и т.д.)
- 3. a) Переведите прилагательные, образованные с помощью суффиксов -ful и -less:

useful, successful, powerful, harmful; useless, powerless, harmless, sleepless

- б) Заполните пропуски прилагательными, образованными от выделенных существительных:
  - 1. Power stations are equipped with ...machines.
- 2. A.M. Terpigorev's investigations in mine safety were a success. He worked out a series of safety measures in gassy collieries. His ... research greatly improved the working conditions in mines.
- 3. The extensive **use** of scientific and technological achievements makes it possible to develop all branches of production. The scientists are working out new methods of mining ... minerals.
- 4. Fire damp does much **harm** to the health of miners. It is the most ... of all the gases in the mine air.

### 4. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов. Переведите их:

entrance examinations
graduation paper
coal deposits
mine surveying
mine safety
description of diagrams
acomplete description
of the quarry
flat-seam mining
thin-seam mining

training of specialists coal seam assistant manager exploitation of deposits bedded deposits transport facilities two-volume textbooks thick-seam mining steep-seam mining

5. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

mining mechanics; descriptive courses; elementary practical training; the best lecturer; lectures on historical geology; a particular interest; an interesting subject; a first-class diploma; the department of Mining Transport; as a result; gassy collieries; the problem of fire damp; the state of mechanization; mining machinery; methods of coal gasification

6. Прочитайте текст A и скажите, разработке каких научных проблем A.M. Терпигорев уделял особое винмание:

# TEKCT A

# A.M. Terpigorev (1873-1959)

Academician A.M. Terpigorev is a well-known mining engineer who successfully combined his practical experience with scientific research. He was born in 1873 in Tambov. In 1892 he finished school with honours<sup>1</sup> and decided to get a higher education. He chose the Mining Institute in St. Petersburg, passed all the entrance examinations successfully and became a student of the Mining Institute.

At the Institute he studied the full range of subjects<sup>2</sup> relating to metallurgy, mining and mining mechanics.

At that time students' specialization was based on<sup>3</sup> descriptive courses and elementary practical training. One of the best lecturers was A.P. Karpinsky. His lectures on historical geology were very popular.

During his practical training Terpigorev visited mines and saw that the miners' work was very difficult. While he was working in the Donbas he collected material for his graduation paper which he soon defended. The Mining of flat seams in the Donbas was carefully studied and described in it.

In 1897 Terpigorev graduated from the Institute with a first-class diploma of a mining engineer.

His first job as a mining engineer was at the Sulin mines where he worked for more than three years first as Assistant Manager and later as Manager.

From 1900 till 1922 Terpigorev worked at the Yekaterinoslav Mining Institute (now the Mining Institute in Dnepropetrovsk).

In 1922 he accepted an offer to take charge of the mining chair at the Moscow Mining Academy and moved to Moscow. From 1930 he headed the chairs of Mining Transport and Mining of Bedded Deposits at the Moscow Mining Institute.

Academician Terpigorev took a particular interest in mine safety. As a result of his investigations a series of safety measures in gassy collieries was worked out. For some time he was working on the problem of fire damp, the most harmful and dangerous of all the gases in mines.

His two-volume work Coal Mining and Mine Transport Facilities is a full description of the state of mechanization and the economy of the Donbas. His other works are about mining transport facilities, mechanization of coal mining and mining machinery. He is one of the pioneers in scientific methods of coal gasification.

### пояснения к тексту

- 1 finished school with honours окончил школу с отличием
- <sup>2</sup> full range of subjects широкий диапазон дисциплин
- <sup>3</sup> was based on базировалась
- 4 to take charge of (smth.) руководить, осуществлять контроль (над чем-л.)
- <sup>5</sup> headed the chairs возглавил кафедры

### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста.
   Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
  - 1. After school Terpigorev decided to work in a mine.

- 2. Terpigorev collected material for his graduation paper which dealt with mining thick seams in the Donbas.
  - 3. For more than three years Terpigorev worked at the Sulin mines.
- 4. In 1922 Terpigorev accepted an offer to take charge of the mining chair at the Moscow Mining Institute.
  - 5. He investigated the problems of mine safety.
- 6. He was one of the first to work on the problem of gasification of coal.

### 8. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. When and where was Terpigorev born?
- 2. What institute did he graduate from?
- 3. What material did he collect while he was working in the Donbas?
- 4. Where did Terpigorev work from 1900 till 1922?
- 5. At what institute did Terpigorev head the chair of Mining Bedded Deposits?
  - 6. What did Terpigorev take a particular interest in?
  - 7. What works by Terpigorev do you know?
  - 8. What problems do Terpigorev's works deal with?
  - 9. What was the result of his investigations on mine safety?

### найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов.

- 1. to fulfil the task
- 2. to accept an offer
- 3. fire damp
- 4. flat seam
- 5. mine safety
- 6. to collect the material
- 7. to confirm
- 8. exploitation of deposits
- 9. coal winning

- а) охрана труда в шахтах
- б) подтверждать
- в) добыча угля
- г) эксплуатация месторождений
- д) метан
- е) принять предложение
- ж) выполнить задачу, задание
- з) горизонтальный пласт
- и) собирать материал

### б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов.

- 1. поступить в институт
- 2. решать важные проблемы
- 3. выдающиеся исследователи
- успешно провести эксперименты
- 5. выбрать профессию
- 6. описательный курс
- 7. происхождение железной руды

- a) descriptive course
- б) to choose a profession
- B) to enter an institute
- r) to solve important problems
- д) safety measures
- e) outstanding (prominent) researchers
- ж) to carry out experiments successfully

- 8. начальник шахты
- 9. мероприятия по охране труда
- 3) the origin of iron ore
- и) the manager of a colliery
- 10. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, выбрав соответствующий предлог (of, for, in, at, to, during, with, from, on):

One ... the professors ... our Institute is known (известен) ... his work ... the field ... geology. He finished school ... St.Petersburg and entered ... the Institute of Mining there. ... the Institute he studied the full range ... subjects relating ... geology and mining. ... his practical training he visited many coal-fields and collected material ... his graduation paper ... the stratigraphy of the Urals. After graduating ... the Institute he worked as a geologist in the Kuzbas. He investigated geological conditions and their influence (влияние) ... the choice ... methods ... mining useful minerals.

11. a) Заполните пропуски глаголами to be наи to do в отрицательной форме Present Simple или Present Continuous.

Obpaseu: They aren't watching television now.
They don't watch television every evening.

1. He	_ listening to the radio right now.
2. He	listen to the radio every day.
3. They	do their homework in class.
4. They	doing their homework right now.
5. I	see any students in that room.
6. Where's	your brother? — he seeing your sister home?

 Заполните пропуски вспомогательными глаголами в Present Simple или Present Continuous.

Образец: Do you read much?

Are you reading an article?

- 1. \_\_\_\_ she learning the new words right now?
- 2. \_\_\_\_ she learn new words in each lesson?
- 3. \_\_\_\_ the students need help with their experiment?
- 4. \_\_\_\_ you understand all the words very well?
- 5. \_\_\_\_ he working on a report?
- 12. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, употребив глаголы to be или to do в соответствующей временной форме:
  - "... you know Terpigorev's works which deal with mine safety?" "Yes, I ...."
- "... you know who ... working on this important problem at your Institute now?"

"Yes, I ... . Prof. N. and his pupils ... conducting research in this field of mining. They ... working out a series of safety measures in gassy collieries."

"... vou at his lecture yesterday?"

"Yes, I ...."

"... Prof. N. speaking about the results of his investigations?"

"No, he ... not. He ... speaking about coal beds and the functions of mine ventilation."

"... you going to attend his next lecture?"

"Yes, I ...."

# 13. Поставьте указанные глаголы в соответствующую временную форму (Past Simple wan Past Continuous).

(study)		I very hard last night. I last night when you called.
(have dinner)		When he finally arrived, I dinner. I at 7.
(take)	5.	While John his English lesson, his friend came.
	6.	John his English lesson yesterday.
(rain)		It hard last night.  It hard when I left the office at five o'clock.
(talk)		They with their professor when I saw them. They with him very often.

## 14. a) Поставьте глаголы в Present Continuous (I am doing) или в Present Simple (I do).

I usually (get up) at 7 o'clock. I (air) my room and (do) my morning exercises. Then I (go) to the bathroom where I (brush) my teeth and (have) a shower. Where (be) my mother now? She (be) in the kitchen. What she (do)? She (cook) breakfast. She (do) it every morning. It (be) 7.45. I (go) to the kitchen. My father (be) already in the kitchen. He (sit) at the table and (wait) for me. We usually (have) breakfast together. Breakfast (be) over, we (leave) home. I often (go) to the university by bus, but this morning I (walk). It (take) me twenty minutes to get to the university. We (have) 3 lectures, seminars or laboratory work every day. We (not to have got) any classes on Saturdays. After classes I (go) home and (have dinner). Then I (have) a rest and (do) my homework.

In the evening I sometimes (visit) friends or (stay) at home and (listen) to music. At the weekends I (like) going swimming.

It (be) 8 o'clock in the evening. I (learn) English. I (learn) English every evening. I (go) to bed at 11 o'clock as a rule.

At the moment I (work) very hard because I have exams soon.

- б) Расскажите о своем обычном распорядке дня.
- в) Побессдуйте с сокурсником о его распорядке дня. Задайте ему общие, специальные и разделительные вопросы (с союзом or).

Примечание:

В альтернативном вопросе мы предлагаем выбор (альтернативу) к любому члену предложения или к целому предложению при помощи союза — or.

Например:

Can she sing or dance? Will you help them or Она умеет танцевать или петь?

Ты поможешь им или мне сделать это?

shall I do it?

# 15. Прочитайте следующие предложения. Переведите их, обращая внямание на перевод слова аs:

- 1. Terpigorev began to work as mining engineer at the Sulin mines, first as Assistant Manager and later as Manager.
- 2. As there was no mining machinery, the miners' work was very hard.
- 3. As a rule, students' specialization was based on descriptive courses and elementary practical training.
- 4. When he went down the mine for the first time, Terpigorev saw that there were no combines, conveyers and other equipment such as used now.

# 16. Закончите предложения. Переведите на английский язык все предлагаемые варманты:

- I. Our institute keeps in close touch with ... (1. промышленными предприятиями; 2. шахтами и рудниками; 3. научно-исследовательскими институтами; 4. угольными бассейнами).
- II. The student is planning to ... (1. защищать диплом; 2. провести эксперимент; 3. принять участие в конференции).
- III. A group of postgraduates took an interest in ... (1. проблемой безопасности в шахтах; 2. маркшейдерией; 3. транспортным оборудованием; 4. открытой разработкой (полезных ископаемых))
- IV. The scientists state that ... (1. этот район богат нефтью; 2. в районе имеется железо, черные и цветные металлы; 3. месторождение меди находится недалеко от поверхности).
- V. They did their best (in order) to ... (1. (раз)решить важную проблему; 2. создать новую теорию; 3. основать новый исследовательский центр; 4. облегчить работу по добыче угля).

- VI. Terpigorev took an active part in ... (1. разработке научных методов газификации угля; 2. разработке плана реконструкции шахт Донбасса; 3. создании первых учебников по горному делу; 4. исследовании природных богатств страны).
- 17. Выразите несогласие со следующими высказываниями. Подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста А. Используйте предлагаемые разговорные формулы:

to my mind; in my opinion; as is known; on the contrary; I can't agree with you; I'd like to say a few words about; I suppose so; I don't think so; that's where you are wrong; far from that; more than that; is that really so?

- 1. In 1895 Terpigorev finished school with honours and decided to enter the university.
- 2. During his practical training Terpigorev visited a number of plants and collected material for his graduation paper which dealt with metallurgy.
- 3. Terpigorev took a particular interest in open-cast mining and wrote many books on this problem.
- 4. In 1930 Terpigorev headed the chair at the Leningrad Mining Institute.
  - 5. Terpigorev wanted to work on the problem of coal gasification.
  - 6. Terpigorev made a great contribution to mining and metallurgy.
  - 18. Задайте вопросы но образцу, уточнив интересующие вас детали:

Образец: Terpigorev collected the material for his graduation paper in the Donbas. (where?) → Where did Terpigorev collect the material for his graduation paper?

- 1. After graduating from the Institute Terpigorev worked at the Sulin mines. (where?)
- 2. In 1922 Terpigorev moved to Moscow and headed the chair at the Moscow Mining Academy. (when?)
  - 3. The scientist took a particular interest in mine safety. (what problem?)
- 4. His work Coal Mining and Mine Transport Facilities gives a complete description of the state of mechanization in the Donbas. (what work?)
- 5. His graduation paper dealt with mining of flat seams in the Donbas. (what kind of problem?)
  - 19. Суммируйте содержание текста А, используя следующие ключевые слова.

to finish school; to get a higher education; to enter an institute; to study the full range of subjects; to visit mines; to deal with; to graduate from the institute; to work as Manager; to accept an offer; to take an interest in; to work out problems; to be in charge of; to head the chair; to take an active part (in)

5

## ГРАММАТИКА

### Имя числительное

**Количественные** числительные от 13 до 19 включительно образуются от соответствующих числительных первого десятка прибавлением суффикса -teen. Числительные, обозначающие десятки, образуются прибавлением к числительным первого десятка безударного суффикса -ty.

**Порядковые** числительные, за исключением первых трех, образуются от соответствующих количественных числительных прибавлением суффикса -th.

Количественные	Порядковые	Количественные	Порядковые
1 — one 2 — two 3 — three 4 — four 5 — five 6 — six 7 — seven 8 — eight 9 — nine 10 — ten	(the) first (the) second (the) third (the) fourth (the) fifth (the) sixth (the) seventh (the) eighth (the) ninth (the) tenth	11 — eleven 12 — twelve 13 — thirteen 14 — fourteen 15 — fifteen 16 — sixteen 17 — seventeen 18 — eighteen 19 — nineteen 20 — twenty	(the) eleventh (the) twelfth (the) thirteenth (the) fourteenth (the) fifteenth (the) sixteenth (the) seventeenth (the) eighteenth (the) nineteenth (the) twentieth N. T.J.
1,000 — 1,000,000 —		(the) hundredth (the) thousandth (the) millionth Англии), a (one) bil	

Составные количественные числительные читаются так же, как и в русском языке: 25 — twenty-five; 58 — fifty-eight; 47 — forty-seven.

Числительным 100, 1 000, 1 000 000 предшествует количественное числительное опе или неопределенный артикль а:

```
100 — a (или one) hundred
1,000 — a (или one) thousand
1,000,000 — a (или one) million
```

Числовые разряды отделяются запятой: 1,800 — eighteen hundred. В составных числительных после 100 перед десятками, а если их нет, то перед единицами, ставится союз **and**:

3,678 — three thousand six hundred and seventy eight 608 — six hundred and eight

При образовании порядковых числительных от составных изменяется только последнее числительное:

125-# — the one hundred and twenty-fifth

## Чтение дробных числительных

Простые ороои	Десятичнь	Десятичные броби		
$1/_2$ — a (one) half	0.1 –	nought point one; zero point one		
$\frac{2}{3}$ — two thirds	2.3 -	two point three		
<sup>2</sup> / <sub>3</sub> — two thirds  1/ <sub>4</sub> — a (one) quarter или , a (one) fourth	2.35 —	two point three five или two point thirty-five		

В десятичных дробях целое число отделяется от дроби точкой, а не запятой, как в русском языке.

Если после дроби стоит существительное в форме единственного числа, то при чтении перед ним ставится предлог **оf**:

2/3 ton - two thirds of a ton

Если после дроби существительное стоит во множественном числе, то предлог **of** при чтении отсутствует:

5.2 centimeters — five point two centimeters

# Чтение процентов

Проценты читаются следующим образом:

2% (или 2 p.c.) — 2 per cent

 $^3/_8\%$  ( $^3/_8$  per cent или  $^3/_8$  p.c.) — three eighths per cent или three eighths of one per cent

0.2% (0.2 per cent или 0.2 p.c.) — nought point two per cent или nought point two of one per cent

# Чтение дат

Годы, в отличие от русского языка, обозначаются количественными числительными:

1907 — nineteen seven (или nineteen hundred and seven)

1983 — nineteen eighty-three (или nineteen hundred and eighty three)

Даты обозначаются порядковыми числительными:

18th September, 1986 — the eighteenth of September, nineteen eighty-six September 18th, 1996; September 18, 1996 — September the eighteenth, nineteen ninety-six

#### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

#### 20. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [e] 'many, 'member, head, 'readily, ef'fective, 'president
- [o] 'foreign, 'modest, 'knowledge, 'prominent
- [æ] a'cademy, 'rapid, 'rapidly, ex'tract, es'tablish
- [ə:] re'search, re'searcher, work, 'working, Earth
- [A] con'duct, 'country, crust, 'Russian, 'study
- [a:] part, re'mark, re'markable, branch, 'charming
- [et] 'detailed, cre'ate, cre'ator, cre'ation, em'brace, mainly

#### б) Прочитайте следующие слова и запомните их произношение:

entire [in'taiə], equal ['i:kwəl], epoch ['i:pɔk], committee [kə'mɪtɪ], palaeontology [,pæliɔn'tɔlɪdʒi], palaeozoic [,pæliou'zouik], stratigraphy [strə'tɪgrəfi], microscope ['maikrəskoup]

#### Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.

abroad [ə'brɔ:d] adv за рубежом

сов firm [kən fə:m] и подтверждать; утверждать

consider [kən sidə] v считать, полагать, рассматривать

contribute [kən'trɪbju:t] v вносить вклад; contribution [ˌkəntrı'bju:ʃn] п вклал

crust [krast] л земная кора

detailed ['di:telld] а подробный, детальный

elect [1'lekt] v избирать, выбирать (голосованием); назначать (на долж-

**embrace** [im 'breis] *v* охватывать; обнимать

entire [In'taiə] a весь, целый; полный; syn whole

exist [ig'zist] v существовать, быть; жить

foreign ['fɔrin] а иностранный

former ['fɔ:mə] a прежний

investigate [in'vestigeit] v исследовать; изучать

justly ['dʒʌstlɪ] adv обоснованно, по праву

prominent ['prominent] а знаменитый, выдающийся, известный; syn remarkable, outstanding

regularity [,regju'læriti] n закономерность

significant [sig'nifikənt] а эначительный; significance [sig'nifikəns] и эначение, важность; exhaust [ig'zə:st] the significance исчерпывать значение

society [sa'salati] n общество

staff [stc:f] n персонал; личный состав; штат

various ('veəriəs) а различный, разный, разный, разнообразный

to advance the view высказывать мнение (точку зрения) to be interested in быть заинтересованным (чем-л.), интересоваться to take (an) interest in заинтересоваться (чем-л.)

# 22. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на перевод прилагательных с суффиксом -ent (-ant):

1. Lomonosov founded the Russian school of mining.

- 2. Prospecting is an applied geological science which studies different methods of discovering deposits of useful minerals.
  - 3. Scientific research institutions solve important problems.
- 4. One of Karpinsky's significant works is about the formation of the Donets Coal Basin.
- 23. Определите по суффиксам, какой частью речи являются следующие слова, и переведите их:

create — creator — creation; elect — election; investigate — investigator — investigation; recent — recently; significant — significance; consider — considerable — consideration; encourage — encouragement; found — founder — foundation; manager — management; exist — existence

#### 24. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

iron deposits
discovery of salt
to design effective machines for underground
and open-cast mining
an entire epoch
scientific activity
equal skill
the origin of platinum
deposits

extracting of useful minerals existing conditions to forecast the deposit to investigate different systems the prominent scientist remarkable works industrially experienced engineers the Earth's crust movement significant results

25. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корией с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

President of the Academy of Sciences; academician; the history of geology; detailed geological map; the new stratigraphy of Russia; the regularity of the Earth's crust movement; petroleum deposits; the introduction of the microscope; the best lecturer

26. Прочитайте текст Б. Назовите области геологии, в которых А.П. Кар-пинский был первооткрывателем.

#### ТЕКСТ Б

## A.P. Karpinsky (1847-1936)

V.A. Obruchev, I.M. Gubkin, A.Y. Fersman, V.I. Vernadsky and A.P. Karpinsky were the prominent Russian scientists who laid the foundation of the Russian school of geology and mining.

An entire epoch in the history of Russian geology is connected with Karpinsky's name. One of the greatest Russian geologists, he was a member and for some time President of the Academy of Sciences of the former USSR and a member of several Academies abroad. The Geological Society

of London elected him a foreign member in 1901. His greatest contribution to geology was a new detailed geological map of the European part of Russia and the Urals.

For many years he headed the Russian Geological Committee the staff of which was made up of his pupils. He was one of those geologists who embraced the whole of geological science. He created the new stratigraphy of Russia. He studied the geological systems in various regions of the country and was the first to establish the regularity of the Earth's crust movement. His paleontological studies are of no less importance, especially those on palaeozoic ammonoids. He also took an interest in deposits of useful minerals and gave a classification of volcanic rocks. He advanced the view that petroleum deposits existed in Russian, which was confirmed later. He studied some ore and platinum deposits and may be justly considered the founder of practical geology of the Urals. He was the first Russian scientist who introduced microscope in the study of petrographic slides.

Karpinsky was a prominent scientist, an excellent man and citizen. He was one of the best lecturers at the Mining Institute in his time. He was also one of the greatest Russian scientists who later became the first elected President of the Academy of Sciences of the USSR. Students were attracted to him not only because he was a great scientist but also because of his charming personality and gentle manner.

Every geologist and every geology student knows very well Karpinsky's most significant work An Outline of the Physical and Geographical Conditions in European Russia in Past Geological Periods.

#### пояснения к тексту

- 1 to lay the foundation заложить фундамент (основы)
- <sup>2</sup> to be made up of состоять из
- $^{3}$  was the first to establish первым установил
- 4 to take an interest in интересоваться, увлекаться чем-либо
- <sup>5</sup> may be considered может считаться (сочетание модального глагола с пассивной формой инфинитива)

#### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 27. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
  - 1. Karpinsky was the first President of the Academy of Sciences.
  - 2. He worked at the Mining Institute in St. Petersburg.

- 3. Karpinsky was a member of many Academies abroad.
- 4. Karpinsky made up a detailed map of the Asian part of our country.
  - 5. He headed the Russian Geological Committee.
  - 6. Karpinsky created a new branch of geology, namely stratigraphy.
- 7. He only tried to establish the regularity of the Earth's crust movement.
- 8. Karpinsky may be justly considered the founder of the practical geology of the Urals.

#### 28. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What society elected Karpinsky a foreign member and when?
- 2. Did he head the Russian Geological Committee or was he a member of that Committee?
  - 3. Did Karpinsky investigate various regions of the Russian territory?
  - 4. Which of his works are the most remarkable?
  - 5. What can you say about Karpinsky's investigations in petrology?

## а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов.

- 1. the Earth's crust
- 2. prominent scientist
- 3. deposits of useful minerals
- 4. to make up a detailed map
- 5. remarkable works
- 6. to advance the view
- 7. scientific society
- 8. to head a Committee (to be at the head of a Committee)
- 9. to lay the foundation of
- 10. to elect chairman (president)
- 11. to take an interest in geology

- а) земная кора
- б) составить подробную карту
- в) замечательные работы
- г) выдающийся ученый
- д) залежи полезных ископаемых
- е) научное общество
- ж) избирать председателя (президента)
- з) заложить основы школы
- и) интересоваться геологией
- к) высказать точку зрения
- л) возглавлять комитет

#### Найдите в левой колонке английские эквиваленты русских сочетаний слов.

### 30. Подберите из списков А и Б близкие по значению слова.

A. to understand because of especially to be at the head of to lay the foundation significance outstanding

 b. due to to head to found to realize prominent particularly importance

## 31. Переведите следующие сочетания слов, обращая внимание на разные значения слова тегу:

very good; very much; very difficult; at the very beginning; at that very moment; at the very end; the very book; this very colliery; that very scientist; the very first; the very last; the very best

- 32. Прочитайте следующий текст. Озаглявьте его. Найдите предложения, в которых глаголы-сказуемые употреблены в страдательном залоге. Переведите их:
- V.I. Vernadsky (1863-1945) is known as the outstanding mineralogist and crystallographer, the founder of geochemistry, biochemistry and radiogeology. Many research centres were established by him. He was elected president of the Ukrainian Academy of Sciences in 1919. He conducted research in the geochemistry of rare elements. Vernadsky advanced a revolutionary theory of the origin of minerals which was described in his works An Experiment in Descriptive Mineralogy and History of Minerals in the Earth's Crust. He prospected for the radioactive minerals. The role of such minerals as radium and uranium was forecast by him.

#### 33. а) Прочитайте по-английски числительные:

- 1) 20, 50, 68, 115, 1,379, 1,840, 6,040, 2,500, 9,000, 200,000, 3,000,000, 1,000, 1,200, 2,500,000, 184,000
  - 2) даты: 1922, 1954, 1968, 1867, 1900, 1904, 1600, 2000, 1066
- 3) дроби:  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{3}{8}$ ,  $\frac{5}{7}$ ,  $\frac{2}{6}$ ,  $\frac{7}{9}$ , 0.1, 0.2, 0.35, 10.02, 30.2, 0.875
- 4) проценты: 8%, 20%, 115%, 49%, 63%, 70%, 101%, 0.05%, 1,16%

## б) Напишите цифрами числительные:

the seventeenth, two hundred and sixty-one, the forties, the eighth, the eleventh, the seven hundred and seventy-fifth, five thousand eight hundred and one, one thousand three hundred, four hundred and ten

## в) Напишите цифрами дробные и смешанные величины:

one third, a hundredth, a half, a quarter, two thirds, nine tenths, nine point eight, point nought nought six, four point nought five

## 34. Прочитайте вслух текст, правильно произнося числительные. Переведите текст.

On July 20, 1969 men from the Earth stood for the first time on the surface of the Moon. The successful landing of Apollo 11 on the surface of the Moon signalled the beginning of the study of the Moon's rocks and minerals, the new science of lunar geology.

About 150 scientists from laboratories throughout the world conducted a wide range of geological, chemical, physical and biological tests on the rocks returned to Earth. These scientific studies have led to new discoveries about the Moon. Most dramatic of all was that the Moon was born at the same time as the Earth, about 4600 million years ago.

It should be noted that the early astronomers, starting with Galileo who in 1610 first used a telescope, observed lunar surface.

The first astronauts to land on the Moon, Armstrong and Aldrin collected 22 kg (481 lb) of rocks. Since then, another 5 Apollo lunar missions have taken place. Apollo 17 landed on the Moon on December 11, 1972. The total rock collected amounts to 382 kg (845 lb) plus 0.13 kg (4.6 oz) from the two unmanned Russian Luna missions. At the Lunar Receiving Laboratories in Houston, the USA, are catalogued 35,600 small pieces of the Moon.

Our satellite is about  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the Earth's size and  $\frac{1}{8}$  of its mass. Hence its gravity is only  $\frac{1}{6}$  of Earth's.

The temperature changes between lunar day and night. Temperature ranges from 110° C (230° F) at the height of the lunar day to -170° C (-275° F) in the lunar night.

- 35. Прочитайте следующие предложения. Найдите в каждом из них группу «подлежащее—сказуемое». Составьте к каждому предложению по два вопроса.
- 1. Scientists of the Russian Academy of Sciences have been active in developing geostatistics and computer techniques for mining and geology.
- 2. Much attention is paid to economic geology and mineral economics for evaluation of mineral deposits.
- 3. Research is carried out in all the main branches of geology and mining.
- 4. New methods of prospecting and extracting useful minerals have been worked out.
- 36. Найдите в тексте А предложения, в которых сказуемые выражены глаголами в форме страдательного залога. Выпишите их и определите временные формы.
  - 37. Выполните задание по следующему образцу.

Образец: Say what you are interested in. (geology)

I am interested in geology.

a) Say what you (your friend) are (is) interested in. (conducting scientific research, prospecting for mineral deposits, the creation of new

mining methods, foreign languages, carrying out experiments, the system of education)

- b) Say what the students were doing when you came into the laboratory. (to record the observations, to work out the plan of the experiments, to design a new quarry)
- 38. Выразите несогласие со следующими высказываниями. Подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста Б. Используйте следующие разговорные формулы:

I'm afraid that's wrong; that's not quite so; I can't agree with you; on the contrary; I'd like to say a few words; to my mind; in my opinion; as far as I know; as is known; I don't think so; according to the text

- 1. The Geological Society of Paris elected Karpinsky a foreign member in 1910. He worked in the field of mineralogy.
  - 2. Karpinsky was particularly interested in theoretical geology.
- 3. We do not know who was the first to introduce the microscope in the study of petrographic slides.
- 4. Karpinsky worked on different problems concerning geology but never gave lectures to students.
  - 39. Суммируйте содержание текста Б, используя следующие сочетания слов.

laid the foundation; a prominent Russian scientist; was a member of; is connected with; was at the head of; took an interest in; advanced the view; was later confirmed; his greatest contribution to; he was the first to (do something); the first elected President; were attracted to

- 40. Подготовьте сообщения на темы:
- 1) Роль А.П. Каришиского в развитии современной геологии.
- 2) Вклад в науку известных вам русских ученых-геологов.

Используйте следующие разговорные формулы:

I'd like to say a few words about; it should be stressed that; I can add; as a matter of fact; broadly speaking; in my opinion; in other words; it is important to say that, etc.

B

41. Прочитайте текст В без словаря. Кратко суммируйте его содержание.

#### TEKCT B

One of the first contributors to mining and geology was the great Russian scientist M.V. Lomonosov who connected the study of minerals and rocks with chemistry and physics, discovered and formulated the laws of mining ventilation and mining geometry.

Among the most prominent geologists are A.P. Karpinsky, V.A. Obruchev, A.Y. Fersman, I.M. Gubkin and many others. Academician A.Y. Fersman ranks among those leading mineralogists who converted mineralogy from a purely descriptive science into a science based on the most fundamental chemical investigations. As the organizer of the Geochemical Institute in Moscow, Academician A.Y. Fersman worked out the basic lines of the study of chemical elements and laid the foundation for the scientific surveying and prospecting for useful minerals. A number of scientific expeditions to different parts of the country were organized by him. He was the leader of the important investigations in the Kara-Kum Desert resulting in the discovery of big sulphur deposits, the construction of a large preparation plant for the processing of sulphur and sulphur products. Academician A.Y. Fersman led the expedition to Central Asia, the Urals, the Altai, the Caucasus and the Crimea. He is especially known for his detailed investigations of the Kola Peninsula which led to the discovery of enormous apatite deposits and the development of a mining-industrial region in the Khibiny Mountains where new towns came into being.

Among those who contributed to the development of mining are B.I. Boky, M.M. Protodyakonov, A.A. Skochinsky, N.V. Melnikov and others. Professor B.I. Boky's name is associated with the solution of a number of significant technical problems in the mining industry of the country and with the whole trend in the development of the science of mining — the analytical method of designing new collieries.

Credit for working out the theoretical principles of the exploration of deposits is due to Prof. M.M. Protodyakonov. His most remarkable works are those concerning the problems of underground pressure and mine timbering.<sup>3</sup> Prof. M.M. Protodyakonov founded a school for the study of rock pressure and its influence on mine timbering.

The leading organization in working out theoretical problems connected with mining in Russia is the Mining Institute of the Academy of Sciences named after Alexander Skochinsky (the director of which he was for many years). A.A. Skochinsky's deep interest in theoretical problems was always combined with wide engineering experience. He took a special interest in mining aerology. He discovered the laws of the movement and control of the movement of air and gases underground. His works are devoted to localization, liquidation and prevention of underground fires.

Academician N.V. Melnikov is well known for his research in the field of open-cast mining not only of coal but also of ferrous and non-ferrous metals and other minerals. He was engaged in the study of fuel energy resources and their utilization.

Prof. I.M. Gubkin's work embraced different fields of geology. He studied geological formations in Russia but he particularly took an interest in the oil deposits of the country and determined the stratigraphy and tectonics of oil layers. Gubkin was the first professor of the geology of oil deposits at the Moscow Mining Institute, of which he afterwards became the rector. He founded the Institute of Research in Petroleum of which he was the head for a long time. He gave lectures on the geology of oil deposits, creating a school of numerous pupils now engaged in studying and prospecting for oil on the territory of Russia. Gubkin directed mining operations in the region of the Kursk Magnetic Anomaly which led to the discovery of big deposits of iron ore at a depth of 200-300 metres from the surface.

He was elected Vice-President of the USSR Academy of Sciences. In the Academy he founded the Institute of Combustible Minerals<sup>6</sup> and became its director. Prof. I.M. Gubkin took an active part in compiling geological maps of the country. He was the author of a hundred and fifty scientific works. One of his last works written before his death was *Estimated Oil Reserves of the Soviet Union*. I.M. Gubkin made a great contribution to the development of the science of geology.

#### пояснения к тексту

- $^{1}$  discovered and formulated the laws открыл и сформулировал законы
- $^{2}$  resulting in the discovery of в результате которых были открыты
- $^3$  underground pressure and mine timbering горное давление и рудничное крепление
- <sup>4</sup> stratigraphy and tectonics of oil layers стратиграфия и тектоника нефтяных слоев
  - <sup>5</sup> to direct mining operations руководить горными работами
  - 6 combustible minerals горючие минералы
- 42. Найдите в каждом абзаце текста В предложение, выражающее его основную мысль.
  - 43. а) Найдите в тексте факты, которые были вам уже известны.
    - б) Прочтите абзацы, в которых сообщается новая для вас информация.
  - 44. Найдите в тексте предложения, точно отвечающие на следующие вопросы:
- 1. What did the investigations of the Kara-Kum Desert led by Fersman result in?
- 2. What was discovered in the Kola Peninsula as a result of Academician Fersman's investigations there?

- 3. What method did Boky introduce into mining?
- 4. What is the leading organization in Russia working out theoretical problems connected with mining?
  - 5. What problems did Melnikov pay special attention to?
  - 6. What deposits did Gubkin take particular interest in?
  - 7. What institute did he found?
  - 8. How many scientific works did Gubkin write?
- 45. Найдите в тексте В английские эквиваленты следующих русских сочетаний слов:

среди самых выдающихся советских геологов; чисто описательная наука; ряд научных экспедиций; обогатительная фабрика; обработка серы; следует отдать должное; предотвращение подземных пожаров; запасы энергетического топлива; охватывать (включать) различные области геологии; заниматься изучением и разведкой нефти; оценивать запасы нефти

- 46. Определите, какой из трех заголовков наиболее соответствует содержанию текста:
  - 1. Prominent Mining Scientists.
  - 2. Prominent Geologists.
  - 3. Russian School of Mining and Geology.

## **КОНФЕРЕНЦИЯ**

## Выдающиеся ученые в горном деле

Планируется проведение конференции «Выдающиеся ученые в гориом деле». Выберите ученого, с докладом о котором вы хотели бы выступить на конференции (согласуйте свой выбор с преподавателем). Подготовьте ваш доклад для участия в конференции, используя тексты учебника и дополнительные материалы, в том числе приведенный инже справочный материал. Слушайте винмательно доклады ваших сокурсников и задавайте им вопросы на английском языке.

## Some more facts about prominent scientists

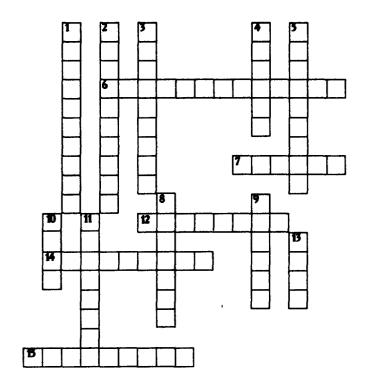
- 1. **G. Berg** (1879-1946), German geologist, author of a great number of books which give a chemical and geochemical interpretation of ore deposits and mineral raw materials.
- 2. A.Y. Fersman (1883-1945), Russian mineralogist and geochemist, one of the founders of the Russian geochemical school. Worked on problems of lattice energy and pegmatites. Activated geochemical prospecting. Author of a very great number of publications.

- 3. A. Howitt (1830-1902), Australian explorer, geologist, anthropologist, naturalist. His publications are devoted to petrology, particularly igneous and metamorphic rocks. He was the first geologist to visit many of the areas he described.
- 4. A.A. Saukov (1902-1964), Russian mineralogist and geochemist. Initiator of historical geochemistry. Encouraged geochemical prospecting. Worked on regularities of migration and the geochemistry of individual elements.
- 5. V.I. Vernadsky (1863-1943), Russian mineralogist and geochemist. Founder of the Russian geochemical school. Initiator of biogeochemistry and radiogeology (isotope geochemistry). Gave the clearest definition of the position and framework of geochemistry. Underlined the dynamics of geochemical processes (migration, cycles). Author of a great number of papers and books.

## KPOCCBOPД (CROSSWORD)

Слова в этом кроссворде — фамилии ученых, которые внесли вклад в развитие науки о Земле. Кто они? Решить кроссворд вам помогут тексты, упражнения, справочные материалы урока 3.

- 1. His works are devoted to localization, liquidation and prevention of underground fires.
- 2. Famous geologist who lectured at the Yekaterinoslav (Dnepropetrovsk) Mining Institute in 1900-1922.
- 3. Outstanding Russian scientist who was the first to connect the study of minerals with chemistry and physics.
  - 4. Russian mineralogist and geochemist.
  - 5. Founder of geochemistry, biochemistry and radiogeology.
- 6. Founder of a school for the study of rock pressure and its influence on mine timbering.
  - 7. Prominent Russian scientist, famous as a specialist in oil extraction.
- 8. The academician who organized many scientific expeditions to different parts of the USSR.
  - 9. Australian geologist, specialist in petrology.
- Prominent Russian scientist who contributed to the analytical method of designing new collieries.
- 11. One of the remarkable geologists who gave the definition of geology as a science.
  - 12. This academician is famous in the field of opencast mining of minerals.
  - 13. German geologist, author of numerous books on geochemistry of ore deposits.
  - 14. The first elected president of the Soviet Academy of Sciences.
  - 15. Academician, author of a great number of textbooks on mining.



## UNIT 4 The Earth's Crust and Useful Minerals

- А. Грамматика 1. Конструкция there + be. 2. Местоимения some, any, по, every и их производные Текст А. Sedimentary Rocks. Б Грамматика. 1. Особенности употребления и способы перевода. страдательного залога (Passive Voice). 2. Количественные местоимения тапу, тись, а few, a little. Текст Б Weathering of Rocks.
- The Earth's Crust. B Tekem B

Kpocceopd (Crossword)

### ГРАММАТИКА

## 1. Kohctdykuha there + be

Present Simple There is/are	Past Simple There was/were	Future Simple There will be
There is a computer in the lab.	There was a computer in the lab.	There will be two computers in the lab.
В лаборатории (есть) компьютер.	В лаборатории был компьютер.	В лаборатории будет два компьютера.
There are many students at the lecture. На лекции много студентов.	There were many students at the lecture. На лекции было много студентов.	There will be many students at the lecture. На лекции будет много студентов.

Конструкция there + be употребляется, когда необходимо сообщить о наличии или существовании в данном месте предмета/лица или предметов/лиц.

На таблице приведены примеры с этой конструкцией в настоящем, прошедшем и будущем времени. На русский язык переводить предложения с этой конструкцией лучше начиная с обстоятельства места (см. перевод примеров в таблице).

Для образования вопросительной формы глагол to be, а в будущем времени will, ставится перед there:

Are there many people in the square?

На площади много людей?

Will there be many people in the square on Sunday?

На площади будет много людей в воскресенье?

Отрицательная форма может быть образована при помощи отрицания **no** (которое ставится перед существительным и является его определением) или с отрицанием **not** (в кратких отрицательных ответах на общие вопросы или если перед существительным есть определение, выраженное словами **any**, **many**, **much**, **enough** и т.д. или **числительными**):

There was no computer in the lab.

- Was there any computer in the lab?
- No, there wasn't.

There were not (weren't) many people in the square.

В лаборатории не было компьютера.

- В лаборатории был компьютер?
- Нет (не было).

На площади было немного людей.

После слова there кроме глагола to be могут употребляться другие глаголы, например: to exist 'существовать', to appear 'появляться', to live 'жить' и др.:

There exist different types of mining machines.

Существуют различные типы горных машин.

### 2. Местоимения some, any, по и их производные

Тип предло- жения		+ thing	+ body + one	+ where
+	some некоторый, какой-то, какой-нибудь, несколько	something что-то, что-нибудь, что-либо, кое-что, нечто	somebody, someone кто-то, кто-нибудь, кто-либо, кое-кто, некто	somewhere где-то, где-нибудь, куда-то, куда-либо, куда-нибудь
?	<b>апу</b> какой-нибудь	anything что-то, что-нибудь, что-либо	апуводу, апуопе кто-то, кто-либо, кто-нибудь	апуwhere где-нибудь, куда-нибудь, где-то, куда-то
<u> </u>	<b>no (≈not any)</b> никакой, ни один	nothing (= not anything) ничто, ничего	nobody (=notmybody) no one, none никто	nowhere (=notanywhere) нигде, никуда

## Примеры:

He made some mistakes.

Give me some coffee, please.

There is somebody there.

? Have you got any books on geology?
Is there anybody in

the lab?

There aren't any students in the lab.

Nobody tells me anything.

Он сделал несколько ошибок.

Пожалуйста, дайте мне (немного) кофе.

Там кто-то есть.

Есть ли у вас какие-нибудь книги по геологии?

В лаборатории кто-нибудь есть?

В лаборатории нет (никаких) студентов.

Никто мне ничего не рассказывает.

Обратите внимание на то, что в предложении используется только одно отрицание (aren't + any, nobody + tells + anything).

#### ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ:

1. Аву и его производные имеют другое значение в утвердительном предложении.

<b>апу</b>	anything	anybody/anyone	anywhere
всякий,	всё что угодно	всякий, любой	
любой	bee 110 yrodilo	DOARJIII, AROOM	куда угодно, везде

Come and see me any time (=it doesn't matter when).

Приходите навестить меня в любое время.

2. Some в вопросительном предложении употребляется, когда мы предлагаем или просим что-нибудь.

Would you like some coffee? Can I have some milk in my coffee? Вы хотите кофе? Можно взять (немного) молока для кофе?

3. Someone/somebody/anyone/anybody являются местоимениями единственного числа (см. форму глагола-сказуемого в примерах).

Someone wants to see you. Is anybody there?

Кто-то хочет вас видеть. Кто-нибудь есть там?

После этих слов часто употребляется they/them/their.

If anyone wants to leave early, they can (=he or she can).

Если кто-нибудь хочет уйти рано, он (она) может сделать это.

### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

#### 1. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

[A] - crust, des'tructive, 'substance, re'sult, 'other

[5:] — salt, form, be cause, cause, coarse

[æ] - 'fragment, 'magma, 'glacier, 'gravel, 'angular, sand

[i:] - heat, sea, peat, feet, meet

[e1] — main, grain, change, shale, 'layer, clay

[tsə] — 'picture, 'structure

[a:] - Earth, 'surface, firm, 'firmly

#### б) Прочитайте следующие слова и запомните их произношение:

igneous ['igniəs], metamorphic [.metə'mɔ:fik], sedimentary [.sedi'mentəri], sediment ['sedimənt], conglomerate [kən'gləmərit], sandstone ['sæn(d)stoun], calcium carbonate ['kælsiəm 'kɑ:bənit], dolomite ['dɔləmaɪt], schist [fist]

#### Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.

саняе [kɔ:z] v заставлять; вызывать; влиять; причинять; п причина, основание; дело; общее дело; 'syn reason

clay [kle1] п глина; глинозем consolidate [kən'səlident] v твердеть, затвердевать, уплотнять(ся); укреплять; syn solidify

**crust** [krʌst] *n* кора; *геол*. земная кора

**decay** [di'kei] v гнить, разлагаться; n выветривание (nopod); распад, разложение

derive [di'raiv] v (from) происходить, вести свое происхождение (om); наследовать

destroy [di'strɔi] v разрушать; уничтожать; destructive a разрушительный

dissolve [d1'zolv] v растворять expose [iks'pouz] v выходить (на поверхность); обнажаться; exposure n обнажение

external [iks'tə:nl] а внешний extrusive [eks'tru:siv] а эффузивный, излившийся (о горной породе)

force [fɔ:s] v заставлять, принуждать; ускорять движение; n сила; усилие

glacier ['glæsjə] n ледник, глетчер grain [grein] n зерно; angular grains угловатые зерна (минералов); grained a зернистый

gravel ['grævəl] n гравий, крупный песок

internal [In'tə:nl] а внутренний intrusive [In'tru:slv] а интрузивный, плутонический

iron ['alon] n железо

layer ['leio(r)] n пласт

like [laik] а похожий, подобный; syn similar; ant unlike; adv подобно

lime [laɪm] n известь; limestone n известняк

loose [lu:s] а несвязанный, свободный; рыхлый

make up ['melk 'Ap] v составлять; n состав (вещества)

particle ['po:tikl] и частица; вклю-

peat [pi:t] n торф; торфяник
represent [.repri'zent] v представлять собою; означать; быть

представителем; representative п представитель; representative а характерный, типичный

rock [rok] п горная порода; igneous
 изверженная порода; sedimentary
 осадочная порода
 sand [sænd] п песок

sandstone ['sæn(d)stoun] n песчаник; fine-grained (medium-grained, coarse-grained) ~ мелкозернистый (среднезернистый, грубозернистый) песчаник

sediment ['sediment] n отложение; осадочная порода; sedimentary a осадочный; sedimentation n образование осадочных пород

schist [sist] п (кристалический) сланец; schistose а сланцеватый, слоистый

shale [jeil] *п* сланец, сланцевая глина. глинистый сланец: clay ~ глинистый сланец; combustible ~, oil ~ горючий сланец siltstone ['siltstoun] n алеврит stratification [.strætifi'keijən] n напластование. залегание

stratify ['strætifal] v напластовываться; отлагаться пластами; stratified a пластовый; syn layered. hedded

substance ['sabstons] n вещество, материал: сущность

thickness ['Olknis] n толщина, мошность

value ['vælju:] n ценность; важность; величина; значение; valuable a ценный (o pyde)

vary ['veəri] v изменять(ся); отличать(ся); syn differ, change (from); variable ['veəriəbl] a переменный; непостоянный; various a различный; syn different

### 3. а) Переведите слова с префиксом ин-:

unconsolidated, uncemented, unusual, undeformed, unsatisfactory, unnecessary, unlike

## б) Переведите предложения:

- 1. The results of the experiments were unsatisfactory.
- 2. Gravel, sand and clay are unconsolidated mechanical sediments.
- 3. They are called so because they are composed of loose uncemented particles.
- 4. The geologists found the old structures which were unusual and undeformed.
  - 4. Переведите следующие слова с префиксом pre-:

pre-existing, pre-glacial, pre-historic, pre-Cambrian, pre-capitalist

- 5. Определите значения like:
- 1. The miner we met at the colliery has three sons. His elder son is taking a course at a mining technical school. Like his father he is going to become a miner. He looks like his father. He likes his future speciality.
- 2. Like sand, sandstones can be divided into fine-grained, medium-grained and coarse-grained.

#### 6. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

valuable minerals
the accumulation of sediments
the destructive action of water
available resources
consolidated and unconsolidated
sediments
successful prospecting
exposed rocks
organic decay
solidified rocks
stratified deposits

various discoveries
the Earth's crust
pre-existing rocks
the internal structure of rocks
firmly cemented particles
fire damp
mineral substances
surface exposure
loose sediments
igneous rocks
sedimentary rocks

 Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

three main groups of rocks, the most important characteristic of sediments, the destructive mechanical action of water, the accumulation of materials, the usual cementing substance, the decay of organisms, organic sediments, mineral oil, large practical value

8. Прочитайте текст А. Перечислите основные способы образования осадочных пород.

#### TEKCT A

### **Sedimentary Rocks**

The rocks of the Earth's crust are divided into three main groups: sedimentary rocks, which consist of fragments or particles of pre-existing rocks; igneous rocks which have solidified from magma and metamorphic rocks. Metamorphic rocks have been derived from either igneous or sedimentary rocks.

Sedimentary rocks represent one of the three major groups of rocks that make up the crust of the Earth. Most sedimentary rocks have originated by sedimentation. They are layered or stratified. Thus, stratification is the most important characteristic of sediments and sedimentary rocks. It is necessary to note that the processes which lead to the formation of sedimentary rocks are going on around us.

Sediments are formed at or very near the surface of the Earth by the action of heat, water (rivers, glaciers, seas and lakes) and organisms.

Fig. 1 shows relative abundance of sedimentary rocks and igneous rocks. It should be noted that 95 per cent of the Earth's crust is made up of igneous rocks (see Fig. 1 left) and that only 5 per cent is sedimentary. In contrast, the amount of sedimentary rocks on the Earth's surface is three times that of igneous rocks (see Fig. 1 right).

Strictly speaking, sedimentary rocks form a very small proportion by volume of the rocks of the Earth's crust. On the contrary, about three quarters of the Earth's surface is occupied by sedimentary rocks. It means that most of sedimentary rocks are formed by sediments, accumulations of solid material on the Earth's surface.

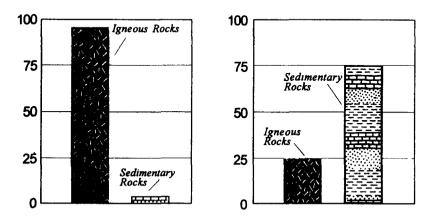


Fig. 1. Relative abundance of sedimentary and igneous rocks

The thickness of the layers of sedimentary rocks can vary greatly from place to place. They can be formed by the mechanical action of water, wind, frost and organic decay. Such sediments as gravel, sand and clay can be transformed into conglomerates, sandstones and clay schists as a result of the accumulation of materials achieved by the destructive mechanical action of water and wind.

Mechanical sediments can be unconsolidated and consolidated. For example, gravel, sand and clay form the group of unconsolidated mechanical sediments, because they consist of loose uncemented particles (grains).

On the Earth's surface we also find consolidated rocks, which are very similar to the loose sediments whose particles are firmly cemented to one another by some substance. The usual cementing substances are sand, clay, calcium carbonate and others. Thus sandstones are consolidated rocks composed of round or angular sand grains, more or less firmly consolidated. Like sand, sandstones can be divided into fine-grained, medium-grained and coarse-grained.

On the other hand, chemical sediments are the result of deposits or accumulations of substances achieved by the destructive

chemical action of water. The minerals such as rock salt, gypsum and others are formed through sedimentation of mineral substances that are dissolved in water.

Sediments can also be formed by the decay of the remains of organisms, by the accumulation of plant relics.<sup>2</sup> They are called organic sediments. Limestones, peat, coal, mineral oil and other sediments may serve as an example of organic sediments.

The most principal kinds of sedimentary rocks are conglomerate, sandstone, siltstone, shale, limestone and dolomite. Many other kinds with large practical value include common salt, gypsum, phosphate, iron oxide and coal.

As is known, water, wind and organisms are called external forces, because their action depends on the energy which our planet receives from the Sun.

#### пояснения к тексту

- 1. **relative abundance** относительная распространенность (минералов в земной коре)
- 2. plant relics (plant remains) растительные остатки

### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 9. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. The rocks of the Earth's crust are divided into two main groups.
- 2. Igneous rocks are composed of particles of pre-existing rocks.
  - 3. Sedimentary rocks are stratified.
  - 4. Sediments are formed by the action of glaciers.
  - 5. Igneous rocks make up 75 per cent of exposed rocks.
- 6. Conglomerates are formed as a result of the accumulation of materials caused by the destructive mechanical action of water.
  - 7. Sandstones are consolidated rocks.
  - 8. Clays are unconsolidated mechanical sediments.
- 9. Chemical sediments are formed by the destructive chemical action of water.
- 10. Peat and eoal are the organic sediments which are of great practical value.
- 11. Clay schist was formed at the beginning of the sedimentation period and clay was formed later.

#### 10. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What main groups of rocks do you know?
- 2. Do sedimentary rocks consist of particles of pre-existing rocks?
  - 3. How were igneous rocks formed?
  - 4. Do you know how sedimentary rocks have originated?
- 5. What is the most important characteristic feature of sediments?
- 6. Do sedimentary rocks account for 10 per cent of the Earth's crust?
- 7. Is gravel a consolidated mechanical sediment? And what about sand and clay?
- 8. What are cementing substances? Can calcium carbonate be used as a cementing substance?
  - 9. Are there only fine-grained sandstones?
  - 10. What can you say about chemical sediments?
- 11. Can you give an example of organic sediments? How are they formed?

#### а) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов.

- 1. земная кора
- 2. растворяться в воде
- 3. песчаник
- 4. уплотненные осадки
- 5. изверженные породы
- 6. мелкозернистый песок
- 7. затвердевать
- 8. подобно гипсу
- 9. обнаженные породы

- a) sandstone
- 6) fine-grained sand
- B) the Earth's crust
- r) exposed rocks
- д) to dissolve in water
- e) like gypsum
- ж) consolidated sediments
- 3) igneous rocks
- и) to solidify, to consolidate

#### Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов.

- 1. coarse-grained sand
- 2. siltstone and shale
- 3. the destructive action of water
- 4. existing rocks
- 5. chemical decay
- 6. sedimentary rocks
- 7. stratified deposits
- 8. pre-glacial period
- 9. particles of a substance

- а) разрушительная сила волы
- б) пластовые месторождения
- в) доледниковый период
- г) крупнозернистый (грубозернистый) песок
- д) частицы вещества
- е) алеврит и сланец
- ж) существующие породы
- з) осадочные породы
- и) химический распад

- 12. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, используя следующие слова.
- a) consolidate consolidation consolidated unconsolidated
- 1. ... is the process of cementation of loose fragments of sedimentary rocks.
- 2. As is known, sedimentary rocks ... under the pressure of overlaying beds.
- 3. Limestone, for example, is the ... rock which occupies vast areas of the Earth's surface.
- 4. Gravel, sand and clay form the group of ... mechanical sediments, because they consist of loose uncemented particles.
  - 6) stratify stratification stratified
- 1. Bedding or ... is the most characteristic feature of sedimentary rocks.
- 2. Coal is a ... deposit that has been developed from plant remains.
  - 3. Coals ... by the decay of organic material.
- 4. As a result of physical, chemical or biochemical changes vegetable remains are ... and changed into peat or coal, micro-organisms remains changed into mineral oil, bones into phosphorite, etc.
  - 13. Подберите из списков А и Б близкие по значению слова:

A. to consist of
to differ
bedded
consolidated
to change
substance
to be similar (to)
to complete
to understand

B. solidified stratified, layered to realize to transform matter to be like to finish to vary to be composed of

- 14. Переведите следующие предложения, обращая внимание на перевод неопределенных местопмений зоте, алу в их производных:
  - 1. Have you any books on geology?
- 2. There is *some* interesting information about the internal structure of the Earth.
- 3. The rock near the Earth's centre is somewhere between 10 and 15 times as dense (плотный) as water.
- 4. Igneous rocks, more than any other kind of rocks show that the Earth is still changing.
- 5. Is there anybody in the lab? Yes, there is. There is some-body there.
  - 6. In some cases limestone is a clastic (обломочный) rock.

rocks.

1. Do you live in the centre? 2. There's at the door. Can you go and see who it is? 3. Why are you looking under the table? Have you lost? 4. He left the house without saying to 5. The film is really great. You can ask who has seen it. 6. Can you give me information about places to see in the town? 7. "Where did you go for your holidays?" — " I stayed at home." 8. There were shops open. 9. We had to walk because there was bus. 10. The station is near here. 16. Betable it ham there no chicay. 1. Is raining hard? 2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street? 3 is almost three o'clock. 4 is hard to learn English in such a short time. 5 is no place like home. 6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February. 17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be. There is There are several There were There were There isn't There were There isn't There will be There isn't There will be There aren't There will ded the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or the starth into three main classes or There will ded the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or there are interest a ded to the cocks of the Earth into three main classes or there are	15. BCTABLITE B HPERIOREMENT Some/any/no/someone/anyone/no one/somebody/anybody/nobody/something/anything/nothing/somewhere/anywhere/nowhere.
2. There's at the door. Can you go and see who it is?  3. Why are you looking under the table? Have you lost?  4. He left the house without saying to  5. The film is really great. You can ask who has seen it.  6. Can you give me information about places to see in the town?  7. "Where did you go for your holidays?" — " I stayed at home."  8. There were shops open.  9. We had to walk because there was bus.  10. The station is near here.  16. Betablie it han there no chicay.  1. Is raining hard?  2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?  3 is almost three o'clock.  4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is Is there Is there There are several Is there There was Are there There was Are there There will be There aren't There will be There aren't There will be There aren't There aren't There will be There aren't There will be There aren't There will classes of the Earth into three main classes or	1. Do you live in the centre?
3. Why are you looking under the table? Have you lost?  4. He left the house without saying to  5. The film is really great. You can ask who has seen it.  6. Can you give me information about places to see in the town?  7. "Where did you go for your holidays?" — " I stayed at home."  8. There were shops open.  9. We had to walk because there was bus.  10. The station is near here.  16. Bctable it hall there no chicay.  1. Is raining hard?  2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?  3 is almost three o'clock.  4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, вспользуя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several There are Is there There was Are there There was Are there There will be There isn't There will be There aren't There will be There is There are not lepebedure upedложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	2. There's at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
4. He left the house without saying	
5. The film is really great. You can ask who has seen it. 6. Can you give me information about places to see in the town? 7. "Where did you go for your holidays?" — " I stayed at home." 8. There were shops open. 9. We had to walk because there was bus. 10. The station is near here. 16. Betable it hare there no emberty. 1. Is raining hard? 2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street? 3 is almost three o'clock. 4 is hard to learn English in such a short time. 5 is no place like home. 6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February. 17. Закончите предложения, вспользуя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there There was Are there There was Are there There will be There aren't There aren't There will be There aren't There aren't There will be There upernoments ynotpedrehm fraironm sectorage and classes of the Earth into three main classes or	
6. Can you give me information about places to see in the town? 7. "Where did you go for your holidays?" — " I stayed at home." 8. There were shops open. 9. We had to walk because there was bus. 10. The station is near here. 16. Betablie it han there no childays. 1. Is raining hard? 2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street? 3 is almost three o'clock. 4 is hard to learn English in such a short time. 5 is no place like home. 6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February. 17. Закончите предложения, вспользуя конструкцию there + be. There is There are several There was Are there There was Are there There were There isn't There isn't There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях унотреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения: 1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	5. The film is really great. You can ask who has seen it.
7. "Where did you go for your holidays?" — " I stayed at home."  8. There were shops open.  9. We had to walk because there was bus.  10. The station is near here.  16. Вставьте it или there по смыслу.  1. Is raining hard?  2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?  3 is almost three o'clock.  4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several There was Are there There was Are there There will be There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	6. Can you give me information about places to see in
at home."  8. There were shops open.  9. We had to walk because there was bus.  10. The station is near here.  16. Betable it ham there no chicay.  1. Is raining hard?  2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?  3 is almost three o'clock.  4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there There was Are there There will be There isn't There will be There aren't There aren't There will be There aren't There are Independent предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге.	
8. There were shops open.  9. We had to walk because there was bus.  10. The station is near here.  16. Becraphe it man there no chimeny.  1. Is raining hard?  2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?  3 is almost three o'clock.  4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't There aren't There aren't There will be There aren't There aren't There aren't There aren't There aren't There main classes or There aren't There aren'	7. "Where did you go for your holidays?" — " I stayed
9. We had to walk because there was bus.  10. The station is near here.  16. Вставьте it или there по смыслу.  1. Is raining hard?  2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?  3 is almost three o'clock.  4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is Is there Is there There was Are there There was Are there There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	
10. The station is near here.  16. Вставьте it или there по смыслу.  1. Is raining hard?  2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?  3 is almost three o'clock.  4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	
16. Вставьте it или there по смыслу.  1. Is raining hard?  2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?  3 is almost three o'clock.  4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several There was Are there There was Are there There will be There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложения:  18. Определите, в каких предложения:  19. Сеоlogists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	
1. Is raining hard? 2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street? 3 is almost three o'clock. 4 is hard to learn English in such a short time. 5 is no place like home. 6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there Is there There was Are there There was Are there There will be There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	10. The station is near here.
2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street? 3 is almost three o'clock. 4 is hard to learn English in such a short time. 5 is no place like home. 6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several There are Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	16. Вставьте it или there по смыслу.
2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street? 3 is almost three o'clock. 4 is hard to learn English in such a short time. 5 is no place like home. 6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several There are Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	1. Is raining hard?
3 is almost three o'clock. 4 is hard to learn English in such a short time. 5 is no place like home. 6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	2. Are many beautiful buildings on this street?
4 is hard to learn English in such a short time.  5 is no place like home.  6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.  7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is Is there Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't   18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	3. is almost three o'clock.
5 is no place like home. 6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	4. is hard to learn English in such a short time.
6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived. 7 is someone at the door, isn't there? 8 were not many students in class today. 9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there Is there Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	
7 is someone at the door, isn't there?  8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложения:  18. Определите, в каких предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	6 was almost eight o'clock when they arrived.
8 were not many students in class today.  9 are only 28 days in February.  17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	7 is someone at the door, isn't there?
17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.  There is There are several Is there Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	8 were not many students in class today.
There is There are several There are Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	9 are only 28 days in February.
There are Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	17. Закончите предложения, используя конструкцию there + be.
There are Is there There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	There is There are several
There was Are there There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	There are Is there
There were There isn't There will be There aren't 18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	There was Are there
18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:  1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	There were There isn't
страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения: 1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	There will be There aren't
1. Geologists divided the rocks of the Earth into three main classes or	18. Определите, в каких предложениях употреблены глаголы в ствалательном залоге. Перевелите предложения:
types. They are divided into sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic	types. They are divided into sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic

- 2. Gravel, sand and clay form the group of unconsolidated mechanical sediments. They are formed by the destructive action of water and wind.
  - 3. Coal is used as fuel. People have used coal as fuel for a long time.

19. Составьте предложения по образцу, используя слова из обенх колонок.

Obpaseu: Conglomerate is formed from gravel.

Sandstone through the sedimentation

·of mineral substances.

Rock salt from sand.

Mineral oil from clay minerals.
Shale from organic remains.

Peat and coal from particles of pre-existing rocks.

Igneous rocks by the accumulation of plant

remains.

Sedimentary rocks from magma.

Metamorphic rocks from either igneous or sedimentary

# 20. Употребите данные в скобках глаголы в соответствующей временной форме:

- 1. There (to be) three main groups of rocks, namely, sedimentary, igneous and metamorphic rocks.
  - 2. These rocks (to make up) the crust of the Earth.
- 3. Sedimentary rocks (to be divided) into: mechanical sediments gravel, sand, sandstone, shale, etc; chemical sediments rock salt, gypsum, ironstones, etc; organic sediments peat, coal, etc.
- 4. The particles of consolidated rocks (to be cemented) firmly to one another.
- 5. Gypsum (to be formed) through sedimentation of mineral substances that (to be dissolved) in water.
- 6. It is quite obvious that the textures of igneous rocks (to vary) according to the depth at which rocks (to be formed) many years ago.
  - 7. Exposed igneous rocks (to be formed) at various depths.

#### 21. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на значение местоимения either и союза either ... or.

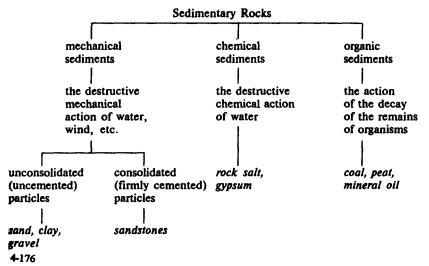
N	<b>Лестоимение</b>	Парный со	0103
either	тот или другой; и тот, и другой	either or	либо либо; или или

- 1. Metamorphic rocks have been derived either from igneous or from sedimentary rocks.
- 2. Sediments are formed either at the surface or near the surface of the Earth by the action of heat, water and the remains of organisms.

- 3. Mechanical sediments can be either consolidated or unconsolidated.
- 4. Igneous rocks are formed as extrusive or as intrusive masses solidified *either* at the surface of the Earth's crust *or* deep underground.
- 5. Either of these rocks are very important because they are often rich in mineral deposits.
- 22. Переведите предложения, используя следующие слова и сочетания слов. (Обратите внимяние на время и залог глагода-сказуемого.)

to consist (of), to be used as fuel, to be dissolved, substance, fuel, as is known, by the action of, to be formed, the Earth's crust, sedimentation

- 1. Земная кора состоит из осадочных, изверженных и метаморфических пород.
- 2. Осадочные породы образуются под действием воды, тепла, холода и органических веществ.
- 3. Как известно, каменная соль образуется путем осаждения минеральных веществ. Эти вещества растворяются в воде.
  - 4. Уголь используется в качестве топлива.
- 23. а) Найдите в тексте А предложения, в которых сказуемые выражены глаголами в страдательном залоге. Переведите эти предложения.
- б) Найдите в тексте А предложения, в которых сказуемые выражены модальными глаголами с инфинитивом в страдательном залоге. Переведите эти предложения.
- 24. Представьте себе, что вы лектор. Расскажите об осадочных породах, используя следующую схему:



## 25. Подготовьте сообщение на тему "Sedimentary Rocks", используя следующий план:

- 1. The characteristic feature of sedimentary rocks.
- 2. Sediments (mechanical, chemical, organic) and their formation.
- 3. The practical value of sedimentary rocks.

## 5

#### **ГРАММАТИКА**

### 1. Особенности употребления и способы неревода страдательного залога

В английском языке, в отличие от русского, не только прямое, но и косвенное (предложное и беспредложное) дополнение иногда может служить подлежащим пассивной конструкции.

Active Voice

The miners **showed** us a new combine.

Шахтеры *показали* нам

Шахтеры *показали* нам новый комбайн. Passive Voice

We were shown a new combine.

A new combine was shown to us.

Нам *показали* новый комбайн.

Беспредложное косвенное дополнение может стать подлежащим страдательного оборота с такими глаголами, как: to give давать, to offer предлагать, to show показывать, to tell рассказывать, to teach преподавать и др.

We were offered a new job.

Нам *предложили* новую работу.

На русский язык такие пассивные конструкции часто переводятся неопределенно-личными предложениями.

Предложное косвенное дополнение может стать подлежащим страдательного оборота с такими глаголами, как: to account for объяснять что-л., to deal with иметь дело, рассматривать (вопрос), to depend on (upon) зависеть от, to look at смотреть на, to provide for предусматривать, to refer to ссылаться (на), to speak of (about) говорить о, to send for посылать за, а также с фразеологическими сочетаниями типа to make mention of упоминать, to make provision for преду-

сматривать, to make use of использовать, to pay attention to обращать внимание на, to take advantage of воспользоваться, to take care of заботиться о и др.

The doctor was sent for.
A new method was much spoken about.

За доктором послали. О новом методе много годорили.

Конструкции такого типа переводятся на русский язык неопределенно-личными предложениями, причем предложение начинается с предлога.

Некоторым английским переходным глаголам в русском языке соответствуют непереходные глаголы: to affect влиять (на кого-л., что-л.), to answer отвечать (на что-л.), to attend присутствовать (на чем-л.), to follow следовать (за кем-л., чем-л.) и др. Соответствующие русские глаголы не употребляются в страдательном залоге:

The experiment was followed by a test (of the device). The lecture was attended by a great number of students. За экспериментом последовало испытание (прибора). На лекции присутствовало большое количество студентов.

Модальные глаголы can, may, must в сочетании с инфинитивом в страдательном залоге переводятся на русский язык словами можно, должен, следует, необходимо, нужно:

The shop must be reconstructed.
It must be said that...

Цех должен быть реконструирован. Нужно сказать, что...

## 2. Количественные местонмення many, much, few, little



ПРИМЕЧАНИЕ: a little — немного и a few — несколько употребляются в смысле некоторое (хотя и небольшое) количество. Вместо much могут употребляться следующие выражения: a lot (of), a great deal (of), a вместо many — a great many, lots of, a lot of, которые обозначают масса, множество, много.

## Примеры:

We didn't spent much money.

Have you got many friends?

We spent a lot of money.

There's too much sugar

in my tea.

Hurry up! We've got little time.

He has very few friends. I've got a little money.

There were only a few houses in the village.

Мы истратили не много денег.

У вас много друзей?

Мы истратили массу денег. Мой чай слишком сладкий.

Поторопись! У нас мало времени.

У него очень мало друзей.

У меня есть немного денег.

В деревне было всего несколько домов.

## ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

## 26. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

[æ] - ex'pand, con'tract, crack, 'gravel, 'fracture

[A] — des'tructive, des'truction, 'substance, 'colour, re'sult

[i:] - 'equal, 'reason, heat, peak, ma'rine

[e] - 'desert, ac'celerate, suc'cession, 'weathering, sub'jected

[o] - 'soluble, 'moderate, phe 'nomenon

[ju:] - 'uniform, 'uniformly, pure, 'purely'

## б) Прочитайте следующие слова и запомните их произношение:

disintegration [dis.inti'greis(ə)n], climate ['klaimit], fissure ['fisə], equal ['i:kwəl], unequal [\lambdan'i:kwəl], marine [mə'ri:n], mountain ['mauntin], mountainous ['mauntinəs], phenomenon [fi'nəminən]

27. Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.

contain [kən'teɪn] v содержать (в себе), вмещать
contract [kən'trækt] v сжиматься;

сокращаться

crack [kræk] п трещина; щель; v давать трещину; трескаться, раскалываться dust [dast] п пыль

- expand [iks'pænd] v расширять(ся); уведичивать(ся) в объеме; expansion n расширение; ant contract
- **fissure** ['fiʃə] n трещина (в породе, угле); расщелина; щель
- fracture ['fræktʃə] n трещина; излом; разрыв; v ломать(ся); раздроблять (породу)
- freeze [fri:z] v замерзать; замораживать; застывать
- gradual ['grædjuəl] а постепенный; gradually adv постепенно
- hard [ha:d] а твердый, жесткий; ant soft; тяжелый (о работе); adv сильно, упорно; hardly adv едва, с трудом
- hole [houl] *п* отверстие; скважина; шпур; шурф
- influence ['Influens] n влияние;  $\nu$  (оп, upon) влиять (на что-л.)
- lateral ['lætərəl] a боковой
- оссиг [э'kэ:] v залегать; случаться; происходить; syn take place, happen; осситтелсе [э'kлғәля] n залегание; mode of осситтелсе условия залегания
- penetrate ['penitreit] v проникать
   (внутрь), проходить через (что-л.)
  phenomenon [ft'nominon] n явленис; pl phenomena

- pressure ['prefə] п давление; lateral pressure боковое (горизонтальное) давление; rock pressure горное давление, давление породы
- rate [reit] n степень, темп; скорость, норма; производительность; сорт; syn speed, velocity
- refer [r1'f5:] v (to) ссылаться (на что-л.); относиться (к периоду, классу)
- resist [ri'zist] v сопротивляться; противостоять; противодействовать; resistance [ri'zistəns] n сопротивление; resistant [ri'zistənt] a стойкий; прочный; сопротивляющийся
- size [saiz] n размер; величина; класс  $(y \in AR)$
- solution [sə'lu:ʃ(ə)n] n раствор; soluble ['sɔljubl] a растворимый; solvent ['sɔlvənt] n растворитель; а растворяющий
- succession [sək'sef(ə)n] и последовательность, непрерывный ряд; in succession последовательно
- undergo [.Andə'gou] (underwent, undergone) v испытывать (что-л.), подвергаться (чему-л.)
- uniform ['ju:nifo:m] а однородный; одинаковый
- weathering ['wedərin] n выветривание; эрозия
- to be subjected to подвергаться (воздействию, влиянию и т.д.)
- 28. a) Переведите на русский язык существительные с суффиксом -ness: hardness, thickness, softness, effectiveness, darkness
- б) Заполните пронуски в предложениях существительными, образованвыми от выделенных прилагательных:
- 1. **Soft** rocks (mudstone, clay) are easily penetrated with a tool and do not greatly resist the separation of a part from the mass. The main property of such rocks is ....
- 2. **Hard** rocks may be strong (sandstone, granite, magnetite) and very strong (quartzite, diabase, etc.). These rocks have the highest resistance to penetration with a tool. Their main property is ....
  - 3. The coal seam is thick and its ... is more than three metres.
- 4. The modern equipment is effective. Its ... is greater than that of the old one.

#### 29. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов. Переведите их:

the contraction and expansion of rocks the destructive action of water the solvent action of water under the influence of heat fine-grained sand at an equal rate external and internal forces hard conditions the Earth's surface mode of occurrence the layers of oil

the destruction of rocks lateral pressure physical and chemical weathering the consolidation of sediments to be of unequal hardness natural waters considerable transformations hard rocks hardly noticeable cracks bedded deposits

30. Определете значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

active processes; physical or mechanical weathering; the change in temperature; different minerals; varied forms; chemical agents; complex changes; the disintegration of rocks; cold climate; high mountain peaks; living organisms; to accelerate the destruction of rocks

- 31. a) По заголовку и выделенным словам определите, о чем говорится в тексте Б.
- б) Прочитайте текст Б и скажите, какое действие оказывает вода на гориме породы при выветривании. Приведите примеры из текста.

### ТЕКСТ Б

### Weathering of Rocks

All rocks which are exposed on the Earth's surface (high mountain peaks, deserts) are decomposed to a certain degree. The process of rock disintegration by the direct influence of local atmospheric conditions on the Earth's surface is called weathering. This phenomenon is often referred to in geology because weathering is an active process. It takes place in the upper layers of the Earth's crust.

The main cause of *physical weathering* is the change in temperature that takes place with the succession of day and night. This phenomenon can best be observed in the deserts and high mountains where the changes in temperature are common.

During the day under the influence of heat, rocks expand whereas at night they begin to contract. As rocks are generally composed of different minerals, their expansion and contraction do not occur uniformly. As a result of this rocks crack. At the beginning these cracks or fissures are hardly noticeable but gradually they become wider and deeper until the whole surface of rock is finally transformed into gravel, sand or dust.

In the regions of a moderate or cold climate, where the temperature in winter goes down to below 0 (zero), the decomposition of rocks is greatly facilitated by the action of water. When water freezes it increases in volume and develops enormous lateral pressure. Under the action of water, rocks decompose to pieces of varied forms and sizes.

The decomposition of rocks under the direct influence of heat and cold is called *physical weathering*.

Rocks are subjected not only to physical decomposition but also to chemical weathering, i.e. to the action of chemical agents, such as water, carbon dioxide and oxygen. In a general way, chemical weathering is an acid attack on the rocks of the Earth's crust, in particular an attack on the most abundant minerals — quartz (sand) and aluminosilicates (clays). Only few minerals and rocks are resistant to the action of natural waters. The solvent action of water is stronger when it contains carbon dioxide. Water causes more complex and varied changes. With the participation of oxygen and carbon dioxide up to 90 per cent of rocks is transformed into soluble minerals, which are carried away by the waters.

Organisms and plants also take part in the disintegration of rocks. Certain marine organisms accelerate the destruction of rocks by making holes in them to live in. The action of plants can often be even more destructive. Their roots penetrate into the fissures of rocks and develop the lateral pressure which fractures and destroys rocks.

## 32. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.

- 1. The process of sedimentation is called weathering.
- 2. The change in temperature causes physical weathering.
- 3. As a rule during the night rocks expand.
- 4. When freezing water decreases in volume and develops enormous lateral pressure.
- 5. The decomposition of rocks is due to the influence of heat and cold.
  - 6. As a rule water contains dissolved mineral substances.
- 7. The solvent action of water is stronger when it does not contain carbon dioxide.

- 8. It should be noticed that the action of organisms and plants is destructive.
  - 9. Certain marine organisms accelerate the destruction of rocks.

#### 33. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What process ia called weathering?
- 2. What process is called physical weathering?
- 3. Where can the phenomenon of physical weathering be best observed?
  - 4. What process is called chemical weathering?
  - 5. What substances can act as solvents?
- 6. Are all minerals and rocks resistant to the action of natural waters or only few minerals and rocks can resist the action of water?
  - 7. How do organisms act on the destruction of rocks?

## 34. а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:

- 1. the Earth's surface
- to be composed of different minerals
- 3. the expansion of rocks
- 4. changes in temperature
- 5. under the influence of heat
- 6. weathering
- 7. destructive forces
- 8. a great number of fractures
- 9. to penetrate into fissures

- а) под влиянием тепла
- б) разрушительные силы
- в) выветривание
- г) большое количество трещин
- д) состоять из различных минералов
- е) расширение пород
- ж) проникать в трещины
- з) изменения температуры
- и) поверхность земли

#### б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:

- 1. увеличиваться в объеме
- 2. развивать боковое давление
- 3. способствовать разрушению пород
- 4. подвергаться гниению
- 5. растворять вещества
- 6. сопротивляться (чему-л.)
- некоторые органические вещества
- 8. ускорять процесс выветривания
- куски породы различных размеров

- a) to facilitate the decomposition of rocks
- 6) to increase in volume
- B) to resist (smth)
- r) rock pieces of varied (different) sizes
- д) to accelerate the process of weathering
- e) to be subjected to decay
- ж) to dissolve substances
- 3) to develop lateral pressure
- и) certain organic substances

## 35. а) Внимательно прочитайте материал в рамке и назовите признаки приведенных ниже существительных:

### Определители существительных

Артикли — a, an, the.

Указательные местоимения — this — these, that — those.

Притяжательные местоимения — my, his, her, its, our и  $\tau$ .д.

Притяжательный падеж имени существительного — Britain's deposits.

Неопределенные местоимения — some, any, each, every.

Количественные местоимения — many, much, (a) little,

(a) few, a lot of и т.д.

Количественные и порядковые числительные — two countries, the third place.

Предлоги — after, at, before, in, on, with и т.д.

our country, the country, any country, each country, many countries, these countries, a small country, whose country, two big countries:

the discovery, after the discovery, each discovery, such discoveries, what discovery, few discoveries, a new discovery

### б) Назовите признаки, позволяющие определить, какой частью речи являются приведенные слова:

their study — they study; the use — we use; the increase — they increase; coal output decrease — coal output decreases; the last lectures — the lectures last; this place — it places; the raw material bases — the country bases its economy on ...

## 36. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, выбрав из предлагаемых в скобках вариантов соответствующее слово:

- 1. There are ... causes of weathering, but ... depends on the change in temperature. (many, much)
- 2. As is known, only ... minerals and rocks are resistant to the action of natural waters. (little, few)
- 3. The roots of plants developed ... pressure which did not fracture overlaying rocks. (little, few)
- 4. A new geological map of the region will appear in a ... years. (little, few)
- 5. ... minerals undergo changes. They have already undergone ... transformation. (many, much)
- 6. Now there are ... sources of energy as important as atomic energy. (little, few)

Значение	Суффикс и его произношение	Пример	Перевод
1	2	3	4
обозначает признак действия	- <b>ly</b> [lɪ]	badly easily	плохо легко
обозначает направление	-ward(s) [wəd(z)]	forward inward	вперед внутрь

#### 37. а) Изучите таблицу и затем нереведите следующие наречия.

uniformly, gradually, greatly, hardly, purely, finally, slowly, highly, generally, simultaneously, backward, eastward, homeward

- б) Заполните пропуски в предложениях, выбирая одно из данных в скобках наречий.
- 1. Rocks are ... composed of different minerals. (purely, easily, generally)
- 2. The expansion and contraction of rocks do not occur ... and at an equal rate. (hardly, uniformly, highly)
- 3. Rocks are ... transformed into gravel. (greatly, slowly, simultaneously)
- 4. Water facilitates the decomposition of rocks ... . (greatly, hardly, highly)
- 5. At the beginning of rock decomposition cracks or fissures are ... noticeable (highly, purely, hardly), but gradually they become wider and deeper and ... rock is transformed into gravel, sand and dust. (uniformly, greatly, finally)
- 6. The method is ... experimental. (simultaneously, purely, uniformly)
- 38. Переведите следующие предложения. Обратите внимание на место предлога в русском предложении:
- 1. The world fossil which means "organic materials accumulated in the geologic past" was originally referred to anything that was dug (to dig добывать) from the ground.
  - 2. The decomposition of rocks is influenced by many factors.
- 3. A large expedition will soon be organized to study the Earth's depth. It should be noted that later the expedition will be followed by another one.

39. Прочитайте следующий текст. Найдите в каждом предложении группу «подлежащее-сказуемое». Переведите предложения с глаголом-сказуемым в страдательном залоге:

The book *Planet Earth, an Encyclopedia of Geology* is often referred to because it gives much information on the geological history of the Earth, the rocks of Earth, the processes which occur in the Earth, etc. For example, sedimentary rocks form a small proportion by volume of the rocks of the Earth's crust. They are formed from sediments, accumulations of solid material. The oldest sedimentary rocks were known some 3,500 million years ago. The processes which lead to the formation of sedimentary rocks are going on around us and different sediments are being deposited and may later be changed into rocks. Most sedimentary rocks have been classified according to their grains size. Great attention is also paid to the rocks of the oceans because they are less studied.

- 40. Укажите, в каких предложениях модальный глагол употребляется с инфинитивом в страдательном залоге. Переведите предложения:
- 1. We can observe physical weathering in deserts and high mountains. This phenomenon can best be observed in places where the changes in temperature are great.
- 2. Sedimentary rocks can be more or less unconsolidated during the process of sedimentation.
- 3. Sedimentary rocks can be found at or near the surface of the Earth.
- 4. Igneous activity can be considered as one of the most fundamental Earth processes.
  - 5. As is known, igneous rocks can be extrusive and intrusive.
- 6. Like sands, sandstones can be divided into fine-grained, medium-grained and coarse-grained.
- 7. One can divide all sediments into consolidated and unconsolidated rocks.

## 41. Соедините главные предложения с придаточными.

- Rock disintegration does not occur uniformly and at an equal rate
- 2. Under the influence of contraction and expansion rock cracks are formed
- a) whereas with the fall of night they begin to contract.
- 6) until they are finally transformed into sand, gravel or dust.
- B) because it does not cause

- 3. During the day under the influence of heat, rocks expand
- 4. Physical weathering can best be observed in the deserts
- 5. Rocks gradually decompose
- 6. The process of physical weathering is purely mechanical

- any change in the chemical composition of rocks.
- r) which gradually become wider and deeper.
- д) **as** rocks are composed of different minerals.
- e) where the changes in temperature are great.

### 42. Задайте вопросы по образцу (Специальный вопрос).

Obpasey: Weathering takes place in the upper layers of the Earth's crust. (where?) → Where does weathering take place?

- 1. The main cause of physical weathering is the change in temperature. (what?)
- 2. Physical weathering can best be observed in the deserts and high mountains. (where?)
- 3. Oxygen, carbon dioxide and water are the main chemical agents which cause the destruction of rocks. (what agents?)
- 4. Certain marine organisms accelerate the destruction of rocks by making holes in them to live in. (how?)
- 43. Выразяте несогласне со следующими высказываниями и подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста. Используйте предлагаемые разговорные формулы:

it seems to be wrong; I can't agree with you; on the contrary; in my opinion; as far as I know; that's wrong

- 1. Physical weathering is not caused by the changes in temperature.
- 2. In the regions of a moderate or cold climate, the decomposition of rocks is not facilitated by the action of water.
- 3. The difference in physical and chemical weathering is that physical weathering causes great changes in the chemical composition of rocks.
- 4. It is quite obvious that plants and organisms do not affect the destruction of rocks

### 44. Суммируйте содержание текста Б, используя слова в скобках.

- 1. The main cause of physical weathering. (the change in temperature, to observe, to expand, to contract, to crack, to be hardly noticeable, to be facilitated by)
- 2. The main cause of chemical weathering. (to be subjected to, to contain, to act as, to cause changes, to be transformed into)
- 3. The effect of organisms and plants on the disintegration of rocks. (to accelerate the destruction of rocks, to penetrate into, to develop lateral pressure, to destroy rocks)

B

45. Прочитайте текст В без словаря. Скажите, о чем говорится в нем.

Слова для понимания текста: suspended particles — взвешенные частицы define [di'fain] — определять

### TEKCT B

### The Earth's Crust

Most mineral resources are derived from the Earth's crust. The crust is composed of minerals that are crystalline solids with specific and rather simple composition. Minerals in the Earth's crust are concentrated into specific groups which are called *rocks*. Two distinctly different types of crust are recognized: oceanic and continental.

Since it is difficult to investigate the floor of the ocean, the composition of the oceanic crust is not known completely. Scientists say that it is relatively constant in composition. The oceanic floor consists largely of minerals rich in calcium, magnesium, iron and silicon, and it is formed by the cooling of lavas extruded on the sea floor to form a type of rock called basalt. It is subjected to the same forces of erosion and weathering.

The continental crust contains less iron and magnesium than the oceanic crust, but relatively more silicon, aluminium, sodium and potassium. The continental crust is more complicated and has a more variable thickness and a less well defined structure.

A systematic examination of all known rock types shows that two principal types predominate: 1) Igneous rocks which are formed by the cooling and crystallization of liquids from deep in the crust called magma; 2) Sedimentary rocks which are formed by

sedimentation and gradual cementation of sediments by the action of water, ice, wind and organisms. They are layered or stratified. Most of the sediments are deposited in the sea along the continents.

As sediments grow larger and are buried deeper, increasing pressure and rising temperature produce physical and chemical changes in them. The resulting metamorphic rocks generally show whether they originated from sedimentary or igneous rocks. This process is slow — hundreds of millions of years are necessary. As weathering and erosion occur, some substances are dissolved and removed in solution while others are transported as suspended particles.

Continental crust contains extremely varied types of rock. It is quite possible to say that the rock-forming processes which we can observe today, have been active for at least 3,500 million years.

The oceanic crust, by contrast with the continental crust, shows little variation in composition. It leads to the idea that the rocks of the sea floor might not contain as many valuable mineral resources as do the rocks of the continental crust. The solution of the problem will be one of the main problems of oceanographic research in future.

- 46. а) Найдите в каждом абзаце текста В предложение, выражающее его основную мысль.
- Найдите в тексте В предложения, в которых говорится об песледовании педр Земли.
- в) Составьте план текста В и краткую аннотацию текста, используя следующие разговорные формулы:

The subject of the text is ...
The text deals with ...
It is pointed out that ...
It is obvious that ...
To sum it up ...

47. а) Прочитайте и переведите текст со словарем.

### Leonardo da Vinci (1452-1519)

Leonardo's all-round genius brought him face-to-face with problems of understanding the Earth. He saw the Earth undergoing endless change, largely occasioned by the forces of weather and water (both marine erosion of coasts and river erosion of hills). Solid land was constantly decaying into alluvial plains. The creation by rivers of their own valleys, which they then silted up, fascinated him. Land loss was being compensated for by a steady rise of the continents from the sea (as erosion made them lighter, they were able to rise).

His awareness of the power of water enabled him to recognize fossils as organic remains buried in strata debris, and he pointed to the similarities between fossil and living specimens. He denied that fossils were due to the Flood and privately speculated on the high antiquity of the Earth.

- б) Скажите, какова точка зрения Леонардо да Винчи на процесс образования ископаемых в недрах Земли.
- в) Расскажите о разностороннем таланте Леонардо да Винчи как ученого, художинка, архитектора и т.д.

### KPOCCBOPД (CROSSWORD)

В этом квадрате зашифровано более 60 слов. Сколько слов удастся вам найти? Запишите эти слова и дайте их русские эквиваленты.

	_									_	
1	G	N	E	0	U	S	Р	F	F	U	Α
N	R	W	E	A	T	Н	E	R	Ī	N	G
С	Α	>	X	P	R	Α	N	Α	S	1	0
L	٧	E	Р	R	A	L	E	С	S	F	S
	E	_	0	E	С	Ε	T	T	U	0	ı
N	L	N	S	8	E	P	R	U	R	R	L
E	X	С	E	8	S	U	A	R	E	M	Τ
D	Τ	S	T	U	R	В	T	Ε	L	ı	s
E	ם	Н	A	R	D	R	Ε	L	Ī	С	T
С	A	U	S	E	٧	A	R	Y	M	A	0
A	Y	Ρ	A	R	T	1	С	L	E	s	N
Y	C	0	N	S	0	L	I	D	A	T	Ε

### UNIT 5 Rocks of Earth's Crust

А. Грамматика.

Функции причастия прошедшего времени (Participle II).

Текст А.

Igneous Rocks.

Б. Грамматика.

1. Степени сравнения прилагательных и наречий.

2. Место наречий в предложении.

3. Наречия на -ly.

Текст Б.

Metamorphic Rocks.

B. Tekcm B.

### A

### ГРАММАТИКА

### Функции причастия прошедшего времени (Participle II)

Причастие — это неличная форма глагола, имеющая признаки прилагательного и глагола.

Формы причастия прошедшего времени (Participle II) стандартных глаголов совпадают с формами Past Indefinite, т.е. имеют суффикс -ed:

to use — used (использованный)

to discuss — discussed (обсужденный)

to invite — invited (приглашенный)

Причастия прошедшего времени нестандартных глаголов приводятся в словарях и их следует заучивать.

### ФУНКЦИИ ПРИЧАСТИЯ ІІ

1. Часть сказуемого, выраженного глаголом во временах группы	i e	Шахта <i>была построена</i> много лет тому назад.
Perfect действительного залога и во всех време- нах страдательного за- лога.	It hasn't rained yet.	Дождя еще не было.
2. Левое определение (стоит перед определя- емым словом)	<u> </u>	<i>Украденная</i> картина бы- ла вскоре найдена.

3. Правое определение The engineers invited to Инженеры, приглашен-(стоит после определяthe mine are good speные на шахту, хорошие образуя cialists. слова. специалисты. определительный причастный оборот) 4. Обстоятельство (с When burnt, coal pro- При сгорании уголь выduced heat. союзами when, while, деляет тепло. (Когда if, unless, as и др.) уголь сгорает, он...) Metals do not melt un-Металлы не плавятся, til heated to a definite пока не нагреваются до temperature. определенной температуры.

Причастие II также входит в состав перфектных форм действительного и страдательного залога причастия I (см. также с. 150), которые обозначают действие, совершившееся ранее, чем действие, выраженное глаголом-сказуемым. На русский язык причастный оборот с такими причастиями переводится деепричастным оборотом или придаточным предложением:

Having constructed the device in the laboratory, the engineers tested it at the plant.

Создав прибор в лаборатории, инженеры испытали его на заволе.

Having been constructed in the laboratory, the device was tested at the plant.

После того как прибор был создан в лаборатории, он был испытан на заводе.

### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

### 1. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [æ] 'magma, mass, 'value, vol'cano, ash, crack, 'rapidly
- [A] crust, cut, tuff, come, a'mong, oc'currence, 'upper
- [a:] 'certain, 'surface, first, oc'cur, Earth, term
- [a:] 'lava, glass, 'glassy, part, 'particle
- [u:] in 'trusion, in 'trusive, ex' trusion, ex' trusive

### б) Прочитайте следующие слова и запоменте их произношение:

basalt ['bæsɔ:lt]; batholith ['bæθəliθ], crystalline ['krɪstəlaɪn], component [kəm'pounənt], diorite ['daɪəraɪt], orthoclase ['ɔ:θo(u)kleɪs], pegmatites ['pegmətaɪts], quartz [kwɔ:ts], rhyolite ['raɪəlaɪt], zinc [zɪŋk]

2. Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслук и постарайтесь запомнить их.

abyssal [ə'bisəl] а абиссальный, глубинный; hypabissal [.hipə'bis(ə)l] а гипабиссальный

adjacent [ə'dʒeɪsənt] a смежный, примыкающий

ash [æ]] n зола

belt [belt] n пояс; лента; ремень

body ['bɔdi] п тело, вещество; solid (liquid, gaseous) bodies твердые (жидкие, газообразные) вещества; породная масса; массив; месторождение; пласты

common ['komən] a обычный; общий; syn general; ant uncommon

cool [ku:l] v охлаждать(ся); остывать; прохладный; ant heat нагревать(ся)

dimension [di'mens(o)n] n измерение; pl размеры; величина; syn measurement, size

dust [dast] n пыль

dyke [daik] n дайка

extrusion [iks'tru:3(ə)n] п вытеснение; выталкивание; ant intrusion вторжение; геол. интрузия (внедрение в породу изверженной массы)

fine [fain] a тонкий, мелкий; мелкозернистый; высококачест-

венный; тонкий; прекрасный, ясный (o norode); изящный; fine-graded (fine-grained) мелкозернистый; fines n pl мелочь; мелкий уголь flow [flou] v течь; литься; n течение; поток; flow of lava поток лавы

fragmentary ['frægməntəri] a обломочный, кластический

glass [glo:s] n стекло; glassy ['glo:si]
а гладкий, зеркальный; стеклянный

gold [gould] n золото

inclined [in'klaind] а наклонный

mica ['maikə] n слюда

permit [pə'mit] v позволять, разрешать; syn allow, let; make possible

probably ['probabli] adv вероятно; syn perhaps, maybe

shallow ['ʃælou] а мелкий; поверхностный; ant deep глубокий

sill [sil] и силь, пластовая интрузия

stock [stɔk] *п* шток, небольшой батикот

vein [vein] *n* жила, прожилок, пропласток

### 3. а) Переведите прилагательные с суффиксом -ive:

intrusive, extrusive, creative, descriptive

- б) Заполните пропуски в предложениях прилагательными, образованными от выделенных существительных:
- 1. Igneous rocks are those which have crystallized from magma. Magma may rise through fissures to the surface of the Earth as lava.

In geology this process is called *extrusion*. Thus, ... rocks are formed either as lavas or as fragmentary rocks.

- 2. Igneous rocks on the other hand may be cooled among the other rocks of the crust. The process is known as *intrusion* and such rocks are called ....
- 3. In his Reminiscences of a Mining Engineer Academician Terpigorev gave a description of the training of specialists at the Mining Institute in St. Petersburg before the Revolution. Students' specialization was based on ... courses and elementary practical training.

### 4. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

fragmentary rocks
intrusive igneous rocks
exposed igneous rocks
coarse-grained minerals
of great scientific value
of unequal hardness
different mineral particles
bedded veins
flat veins
steep veins
coal fines
inclined coal seams
different sources of fuel

slowly-cooled rocks at shallow depths adjacent rocks deep-seated rocks enormous lateral pressure at a slow rate rock fissures clay veins numerous veins smaller dimensions glassy surface mode of occurrence volcanic ashes and dust

Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корией с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

intrusive and extrusive rocks; intrusive magma; large crystals; volcanic rocks; mountain zones; zones of major deformation; mineral grains; granites and diorites; the group of intrusive or plutonic rocks; straight parallel walls; gigantic crystals; several tons; slowly-cooled batholiths; thick laccoliths; other plutonites; coarse-grained pegmatites; lava flow

Прочитайте текст А. Назовите характерные особенности изверженных вород:

### **TEKCT A**

### **Igneous Rocks**

Igneous rocks have crystallized from solidified magma.

Igneous rocks can be classified in a number of ways and one of them is based on mode of occurrence. They occur either as intrusive (below the surface) bodies or as extrusive masses solidified at the Earth's surface. The terms "intrusive" and "extrusive" refer to the place where rocks solidified.

The grain size of igneous rocks depends on their occurrence. The intrusive rocks generally cool more slowly than the extrusive rocks and crystallize to a larger grain size. The coarser-grained intrusive rocks with grain size of more than 0.5 mm called plutonic or abyssal are referred to as intrusive igneous rocks because they are intruded into older pre-existing rocks. Extrusive or volcanic rocks have even finer grains, less than 0.05 mm and are glassy.

Exposed igneous rocks are most numerous in mountain zones for two reasons. First, the mountain belts have been zones of major deformation. Second, uplifts in mountain belts have permitted plutonic masses to be formed.

The largest bodies of igneous rocks are called batholiths (Fig. 2). Batholiths cooled very slowly. This slow cooling permitted large mineral grains to form. It is not surprising that batholiths are composed mainly of granitic rocks with large crystals called plutons. As is known, granites and diorites belong to the group of intrusive or plutonic rocks formed by solidification of igneous mass under the Earth's crust. Granites sometimes form smaller masses called stocks, when the occurrence has an irregular shape but smaller dimensions than the batholiths.

Laccoliths and sills, which are very similar, are intruded between sedimentary rocks. Sills are thin and they may be horizontal, inclined or vertical. Laccoliths are thicker bodies and in some cases they form mountains.

Dykes are also intrusive bodies. They range in thickness from a few inches to several thousand feet. Dykes are generally much longer than they are wide. Most dykes occupy cracks and have straight parallel walls. These bodies cool much more rapidly and are commonly fine-grained. For example, granite may occur in dykes that cut older rocks.

Pegmatites (quartz, orthoclase and mica) also belong to the group of plutonic or intrusive rocks. They occur in numerous veins which usually cut through other plutonites, most often granite, or adjacent rocks.

Extrusive igneous rocks have been formed from lava flows which come from fissures to the surface and form fields of volcanic rocks such as rhyolite, andesite, basalt, as well as volcanic ashes and dust, tuff, etc. As a rule, these rocks of volcanic origin cool rapidly and are fine-grained. It is interesting to note that basalt is the most

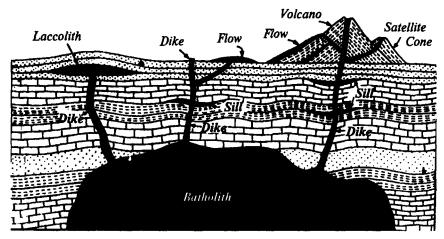


Fig. 2. Igneous rocks

abundant of all lavatypes. It is the principal rock type of the ocean floor.

Igneous rocks are rich in minerals that are important economically or have great scientific value. Igneous rocks and their veins are rich in iron, gold, zinc, nickel and other ferrous metals.

### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 7. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
  - 1. Igneous rocks have been formed by sedimentation.
- 2. Intrusive rocks have been formed by the cooling of rocks of the Earth's crust.
  - 3. Extrusive rocks have been formed the same way.
- 4. The grain size of igneous rocks depends on mode of occurrence.
  - 5. Exposed igneous rocks are numerous in mountain zones.
  - 6. Granites and diorites belong to the group of extrusive rocks.
  - 7. As a rule, granite may occur in dykes.
- 8. Pegmatites do not belong to the group of plutonic or intrusive rocks.

### 8. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

1. Have igneous rocks crystallized from magma or have they been formed by sedimentation?

- 2. Which types of igneous rocks do you know?
- 3. What does the grain size of igneous rocks depend on?
- 4. Can you give an example of intrusive or plutonic rocks?
- 5. Are diorites intrusive or extrusive formations?
- 6. What do you know about batholiths?
- 7. Do pegmatites belong to the group of plutonic or volcanic rocks?
- 8. How do pegmatites occur?
- 9. What minerals are igneous rocks rich in?

### 2. а) Найдите в нравой колопке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов;

- 1. adjacent layers
- 2. abvssal rocks
- 3. dimensions of crystals
- 4. valuable minerals
- 5. shape and size of grains
- 6. mode of occurrence
- 7. coarse-grained
- 8. uplifts
- 9. zones of major deformation

- а) способ залегания
- б) крупнозернистый
- в) зоны крупных нарушений
- г) абиссальные (глубинные) породы
- д) смежные пласты (слои)
- е) размеры кристаллов
- ж) взбросы
- з) форма и размер зерен
- и) ценные минералы

#### б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов:

- 1. затвердевшие массы
- 2. обломочные породы
- 3. медленно остывать
- 4. мелкозернистый
- 5. многочисленные трещины
- 6. неправильная форма
- 7. на определенной глубине
- 8. экономически важный
- 9. научная ценность
- 10. существующие типы пород

- a) irregular shape
- б) at a certain depth
- B) economically important
- r) solidified masses
- д) scientific value
- e) to cool slowly
- x) existing types of rocks
- 3) fine-grained
- и) fragmentary rocks
- k) numerous cracks or fissures

### 10. Переведите сочетания слов, обращая внимание на место иричастия прошедшего времени по отношению к определяемому существительному:

accelerated process
crystallized magma
successfully improved design
weakly deformed minerals
rapidly cooled rocks
utilized equipment
minerals dissolved by the
action of water
rocks formed by solidification
rocks exposed on the Earth's
surface

weathered fragments of rocks generally applied method unconsolidated and consolidated rocks unfrozen ground detailed studies of the Earth's crust dissolved minerals consolidated rocks rocks consolidated by some substances stratified sediments exposed rocks transformations caused by new conditions...

- 11. Найдите предложения, в которых имеются причастия прошедшего времени. Определите их функцию. Переведите предложения:
- 1. Igneous rocks form a large group of minerals which are economically important.
- 2. The igneous rocks formed by cooling occur either as intrusive or extrusive rocks.
- 3. Orthoclase is particularly used in great quantities as raw material in the production of porcelain (фарфор).
- 4. The clayey mass obtained by the decomposition of orthoclase is usually white and is called kaolin. The product obtained is used in industry.
- 5. Quartz occurs in the form of small grains. Quartz crystals found in the cracks and fractures of rocks are very hard and beautiful.
  - 6. Pure quartz sands are used in the production of glass.
- 7. Actual observations of rocks exposed on the continent show that shale represents 46 per cent of the total, sandstone about 32 per cent, and limestone about 22 per cent.
- 12. Замените определительное придаточное предложение определительным причастным оборотом.

Obpasey: The igneous rocks which have crystallized from magma may rise through fissures to the surface of the Earth as lava. → The igneous rocks crystallized from magma may rise to the surface of the Earth as lava.

- 1. The classification of igneous rocks which is given below is based on texture and composition of minerals.
- 2. Igneous rocks were a hot molten mass which was known as magma.
- 3. Observations have shown that the rock types which were produced by molten volcanoes, include, for example, rhyolite, andesite, basalt and other rocks.
- 4. Andesite which was first found in the Andes Mountains in South America is the fine-grained rock, intermediate in composition between granite and basalt.
- 5. Copper is second only to iron among the important metals which are widely used in modern engineering.
- 13. Найдите в тексте А и выпишите: 1) причастия прошедшего времени в функции левого определения вместе с существительными, которые они определяют; 2) причастия прошедшего времени, входящие в определительный причастиый оборот; 3) причастия прошедшего времени, используемые для образования глагольных форм группы Perfect; 4) причастия прошедшего времени. используемые для образования ствадательного залога.

### 14. Соедините главные предложения с придаточными:

- Abyssal rocks belong to the group of intrusive rocks
- 2. Uplifts in mountain belts have permitted erosion to the depths
- 3. Granites and diorites occur as batholiths
- 4. Pegmatites (quartz, orthoclase and mica) occur in numerous veins
- 5. Extrusive igneous rocks have been formed as lavas
- 6. Igneous rocks are rich in minerals
- 7. Physical weathering occurs in the deserts and in high mountains

- a) that are economically important.
- 6) which usually cut through plutonites.
- B) because they are intruded into pre-existing rocks.
- r) at which plutonic masses are formed.
- д) where the changes in temperature are great.
- e) which come from fissures to the surface of the Earth's crust.
- ж) which are large irregular masses.

### 15. Закончите следующие предложения подходящими по смыслу словами из текста A:

- 1. Batholiths are composed of ....
- 2. Laccoliths are very similar to sills but sills ....
- 3. Granites belong to the group of ....
- 4. Pegmatites are also ... .
- 5. Dykes are intrusive bodies which ....
- 6. Extrusive rocks have been formed from ....
- 7. As for the origin of intrusive rocks, they ....
- 8. The grain size of igneous rocks may be different. For example ... .

# 16. Выразите несогласне со следующими высказываниями. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста, используя предлагаемые разговорные формулы:

it seems to be wrong; I don't agree with you; I don't think so; on the contrary; that's not quite so; as far as I know

- 1. Igneous rocks have been formed by sedimentation. Nothing is written about different types of these rocks.
- 2. One cannot explain the fact that exposed igneous rocks are most numerous in mountain zones.
- 3. Granites and diorites belong to the group of extrusive rocks and their mode of occurrence is unknown.
- 4. Plutonic or abyssal rocks are extrusive rocks with grain size less than 0.5 mm.

### 17. Суммируйте содержание текста А, используя слова в скобках.

- 1. The formation of igneous rocks and their types. (to be formed, to solidify, to cool, either ... or, magma, volcano, lava, fragmentary rocks)
- 2. The grain size of igneous rocks and its dependence on the mode of occurrence. (grain size, plutonic or abyssal rocks, extrusive and volcanic rocks)
- 3. The causes of exposed rocks formation in mountain zones. (various depths, zones of major deformation, uplifts, erosion)
- 4. Granites and diorites and their mode of occurrence. (intrusive rock, to occur as..., irregular mass, stocks, dykes, occurrences, at a certain depth)
- 5. Pegmatites and their mode of occurrence. (plutonic rocks, to occur, vein, to cut through, as well as adjacent rocks)
- 18. Расскажите об изверженных породах. (См. рис. 2, с. 118.) В своем рассказе дайте ответы на следующие вопросы:
  - 1. What does Fig. 2 show?
  - 2. What type of rocks are represented there?
- 3. What intrusive and extrusive occurrences does the figure show? What can you say about each occurrence?
  - 4. What minerals does each group of rocks represent?

Б

### ГРАММАТИКА

### 1. Степени сравнения прилагательных и наречий

Односложные и некоторые двусложные прилагательные и наречия образуют сравнительную степень прибавлением к своей основе суффикса -er, а превосходную степень — при-бавлением суффикса -est. Многосложные и большинство дву-сложных прилагательных образуют сравнительную степень при помощи слова more более, а превосходную — при помощи слова most самый, наиболее.

Перед прилагательными в превосходной степени употребляется определенный артикль.

Положительная степень	Сравнительная степень	Превосходная степень
long длинный	longer даиннее	the longest самый длинный
heavy <i>тяжелый</i>	heavier тяжелее	the heaviest самый тяжелый
difficult <i>трудный</i>	more difficult труднее	the most difficult самый трудный
late поздно early рано clearly ясно	later поэже carlier раньше more clearly яснее	latest позже всего carliest раньше всего most clearly яснее
		всего

### Особые случан

Положительная степень	Сравнительная степень	Превосходная степень
good xopowuŭ } well xopowo }	better лучше	the best самый лучший; лучше всего
bad nnoxoŭ badly nnoxo }	worse xyxce	the worst самый пло- хой, худший; хуже всего
little <i>маленький; мало</i> much	less меньше	the least меньше всего
many много	тоге больше	the most больше всего
far далекий; далеко	farther более далекий, дальше further дальнейший, добавочный	the farthest, самый дале- the furthest, кий, дальше всего

Для усиления сравнительной степени перед прилагательными и наречиями употребляются слова much, far, still, a great deal, которые переводятся на русский язык словами: намного, значительно, гораздо, еще:

far more favourable conditions far better results much more work

much more successfully

гораздо (намного) более благоприятные условия гораздо лучше результаты значительно (гораздо) больше работы гораздо более успешно

Прилагательные в превосходной степени усиливаются выражением **by far**.

Open-cast mining is by far the most efficient.

Разработка открытым способом наиболее эффективна.

### 2. Место наречий в предложении

Наречия неопределенного времени always всегда, often часто, seldom редко, already уже, usually обычно, sometimes иногда, soon скоро, never никогда и т.д. ставятся перед смысловым глаголом или после первого вспомогательного глагола в сложных глагольных формах:

Combustible shales often occur as horizontal beds.

Coal is usually used as fuel.

He doesn't ever play tennis.

Горючие сланцы *часто* залегают горизонтальными пластами.

Уголь *обычно* используется в качестве топлива.

Он *никогда* не играет в теннис.

Наречия, выполняющие в предложениях функцию обстоятельства места и времени, стоят либо в начале предложения перед подлежащим, либо в конце предложения:

Yesterday a group of students visited the concentration plant.

I was very busy vesterday

Вчера группа студентов посетила обогатительную фабрику.

I was very busy yesterday. Я был очень занят вчера.

Наречия, определяющие прилагательное, причастие или другое наречие, обозначают признак или степень качества и всегда стоят перед словом, к которому относятся:

a chemically pure substance химически чистое вещество; a highly developed industry высокоразвитая промышленность.

### 3. Наречия на -ly

От многих прилагательных можно образовать наречия, прибавив к ним суффикс -ly: nice — nicely, great — greatly, careful — carefully, definite — definitely, excellent — excellently и др.

Некоторые наречия, образованные от прилагательных с помощью суффикса -ly, отличаются по значению от соответствующих прилагательных:

Прилагательные		i	eyua		
real	_	настоящий	really	_	действительно
direct	_	прямой	directly	_	сразу, непосредственно
hard	_	трудный	hardly	_	едва
ready	_	готовый	readil	_	быстро, легко
large	_	большой	largely	_	очень, в основном

Некоторые наречия имеют две формы: одну без суффикса, совпадающую с прилагательным, другую — с суффиксом -ly. Последние часто не совпадают по значению с соответствующими прилагательными:

Прилагательные	Наречия без суффикса	Наречия с суффиксом		
high — высокий	high — высоко	highi — весьма, очень, чрезвычайно		
wide — широкий	wide — широко	widely — очень, значительно		
near — близкий	пеаг — близко	nearly — noumu		
late — поздний	late — поздно	lately — недавно, за последнее время		
close — близкий	close — близко, рядом	closely — тщательно, внимательно		

### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

### 19. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [i:] be neath, mean, heat, cleave, 'easy, 'easily, 'medium
- [A] some, run, such, a'bove, 'structure, 'other
- [ei] 'nature, 'slate, 'layer, 'flaky, 'trace, great
- [ai] 'mica, 'primary, de'fine, 'crystalline
- [ou] show, low, slow, com'pose, 'process, know
- [a:] third, Earth, oc'cur, 'surface
- [a:] marble, large

### б) Прочитайте следующие слова и запомните их произношение:

gneiss [nais], chlorite ['klo:rait], phyllites ['filaits], quartzite ['kwo:tsait]

### в) Прочитайте слитно следующие сочетания слов:

the nature of pre-existing rock and the mechanism of the metamorphic deformation

an opportunity of analysing the causes of its metamorphism

to be subjected to pressure, heat and chemically active fluids beneath the Earth's surface

to consist of quartz, orthoclase and mica

to be determined by at least four variable geologically related parameters

 Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.

band [bænd] n слой; полоса; прослоек (породы); syn layer

cleave [kli:v] v расщепляться; трескаться, отделяться по кливажу; cleavage n кливаж

constituent [kən'stitjuənt] n coctabная часть, компонент

define [di'fain] v определять, давать определение

**distribute** [dis'tribju:t] ν (among) распределять (между); раздавать

disturb [dis'tə:b] v нарушать; смещать excess [ik'ses] n избыток, излишек; ant deficiency [di'fii(ə)nsi]

flaky ['fleɪki] а слоистый; похожий на хлопья

fluid ['flu(:)id] *п* жидкость; жидкая или газообразная среда

foliate ['foulieit] и расщепляться на тонкие слои; foliated a листоватый, тонкослоистый; syn flaky

marble ['mc:bl] n mpamop mention ['mcnf(ə)n] v упоминать, ссылаться; n упоминание **plate** [pleit] *п* пластина; полоса (металла)

pressure ['prefə] n давление; rock
pressure (underground pressure)
ropнoe давление, давление
ropных пород

relate [гі'leit] v относиться; иметь отношение; related a родственный; relation n отношение; relationship n родство; свойство; relative a относительный; соответственный

гип [глп] (гап [гæп], гип) v бегать, двигаться; течь; работать (о машине); тянуться, простираться; управлять (машиной); вести (дело, предприятие)

schistose ['fistous] а сланцеватый; слоистый

sheet [fi:t] n полоса

slate [sleit] n сланец; syn shale

split [split] (split) v раскалываться, расщепляться, трескаться; syn cleave

trace [treis] n след; tracing n прослеживание

at least по крайней мере to give an opportunity (of) давать возможность (кому-л., чему-л.) in such a way таким образом

21. а) Определите по словообразовательным элементам (суффиксам и префиксам), какой частью речи являются следующие слова. Переведите их:

known — unknown; differ — different — difference; found — founder — foundation; mean — meaning; difficult — difficulty

- 6) Переведите на русский язык прилагательные с суффиксом -able: changeable, understandable, valuable, variable, breakable
- в) Заполните пропуски прилагательными, образованными от выделенных глаголов или существительных:
- 1. Under the action of pressure and high temperature rocks change their composition and structure. One may say that the structure and composition of rocks are ....

- 2. Everybody understands that metamorphic rocks have been developed from earlier igneous and sedimentary rocks. It is quite ... that these changes take place in texture, in mineral composition and in structural features of rocks.
  - 3. Soft rocks can break into pieces. They are ....
  - 4. Rare metals are of great value. They are very ....
- 5. Rock pressure and temperature vary. The role of water in metamorphism is determined by four ... parameters.

## 22. Переведите наречия, образованные от прилагательных с номощью суффикса -/y:

chief главный — chiefly ..., general общий, основной — generally ..., common общий — commonly ..., original первоначальный — originally ..., particular особенный — particularly ..., practical практический, фактический — practically ..., usual обычный — usually ..., wide широкий — widely ...

### 23. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов. Переведите их:

cleavage distribution
geological disturbances
schistose coal
medium-grade coals
the most common metamorphic
rocks
chemically active fluids
rock pressure
excess of water
foliated and non-foliated
metamorphic rocks

the definition of rocks schistose structure low-grade metals high-grade oil exposed igneous rocks single orthoclase crystals scientific value water pressure thin sheets the Earth's surface separate plates

## 24. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с кориями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

metamorphic rocks; some changes in texture; in mineral composition and structure; the description of metamorphism; schistose structure; the role of water; four variable geologically related parameters; flaky materials; the mechanism of metamorphic deformation; crystalline schists; the great dislocations of the Earth's crust; during normal progressive metamorphism

### 25. Прочитайте текст Б и найдите в нем ответы на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What is metamorphism?
- 2. Why can metamorphic rocks cleave easily?
- 3. Why is the study of metamorphic rocks important?

### ТЕКСТ Б

### Metamorphic Rocks

The problem discussed concerns metamorphic rocks which compose the third large family of rocks. "Metamorphic" means "changed from". It shows that the original rock has been changed from its primary form to a new one. Being subjected to pressure, heat and chemically active fluids beneath the Earth's surface, various rocks in the Earth's crust undergo changes in texture, in mineral composition and structure and are transformed into metamorphic rocks. The process described is called metamorphism.

As is known, metamorphic rocks have been developed from earlier igneous and sedimentary rocks by the action of heat and pressure.

Gneisses, mica schists, phyllites, marbles, slate, quartz, etc. belong to the same group of rocks. Having the same mineral composition as granite, gneisses consist chiefly of quartz, orthoclase and mica. However unlike granite, they have a schistose structure. It means that their constituents are distributed in bands or layers and run parallel to each other in one direction. If disturbed the rock cleaves easily into separate plates.

The role of water in metamorphism is determined by at least four variable geologically related parameters: rock pressure, temperature, water pressure, and the amount of water present.

During a normal progressive metamorphism rock pressure and temperature are interdependent, and the amount of water and the pressure of water are related to the sediments and to the degree of metamorphism in such a way that, generally speaking, the low-grade metamorphic rocks are characterized by the excess of water. The medium-grade rocks defined by some deficiency of water and the high-grade metamorphic rocks are characterized by the absence of water.

Many of the metamorphic rocks mentioned above consist of flaky materials such as mica and chlorite. These minerals cause the rock to split into thin sheets, and rocks become foliated.

Slate, phyllite, schist and gneiss belong to the group of foliated metamorphic rocks. Marble and quartzite are non-foliated metamorphic rocks.

The structure of metamorphic rocks is of importance because it shows the nature of pre-existing rocks and the mechanism of metamorphic deformation. Every trace of original structure is of great importance to geologists. It gives an opportunity of analysing the causes of its metamorphism.

Being often called crystalline schists, metamorphic rocks such as gneisses and mica have a schistose structure. Metamorphic rocks represent the oldest portion of the Earth's crust. They are mostly found in the regions of mountain belts where great dislocations on the Earth once took place.

### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 26. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста Б. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. Generally speaking, metamorphic rocks have been developed from ores.
- 2. Marble, slate and phyllite belong to the group of metamorphic rocks.
- 3. As is known, unlike granite metamorphic rocks have a schistose structure.
- 4. It is quite obvious that the role of water in metamorphism is great.
- 5. As a rule, low-grade metamorphic rocks are characterized by the absence of water.
  - 6. Flaky materials cause the rock to split into thin sheets.
- 7. It should be noted that marble and quartzite are foliated metamorphic rocks.
- 8. The structure of metamorphic rocks shows the nature of older preexisting rocks and the mechanism of metamorphic deformation as well.
  - 9. All metamorphic rocks are non-foliated.

### 27. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. Do you know how metamorphic rocks have been formed?
- 2. Which rocks belong to the group of metamorphic?
- 3. Does gneiss have the same structure as granite?
- 4. Is the role of water great in metamorphism?
- 5. What rocks do we call foliated? What can you say about non-foliated metamorphic rocks?
- 6. How can geologists trace the original structure of metamorphic rocks?
  - 7. Why are metamorphic rocks often called crystalline schists?
- 28. а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:
  - 1. as a result of the chemical and physical changes
  - 2. constituents of rocks
- а) полоса (или прослоек) угля
- б) составляющие пород
- в) расшепляться на отдельные слои

- 3 to be subjected to constant development
- 4. to undergo changes
- 5. excess of water
- 6 low-grade ores
- 7. coal band
- 8. to cleave into separate layers
- 9 traces of original structure
- 10. generally speaking

- г) вообще говоря
- д) в результате химических и физических изменений
- е) избыток воды
- ж) изменяться
- з) находиться в постоянном развитии
- и) низкосортные руды
- к) следы первоначальной структуры

### б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:

- 1. иметь значение
- 2. упомянутые выше
- 3. сланцеватая структура
- 4. в отличие от гранита
- 5. недостаток воды
- существовавшие ранее породы
- 7. слоистые породы
- 8. мрамор и сланец
- 9. гнейс
- 10. давать возможность
- 11. определять структуру

- a) unlike granite
- 6) to be of importance
- B) pre-existing rocks
- r) mentioned above
- д) schistose structure
- e) to give an opportunity (of doing smth)
- ж) to define (determine) rock texture
- 3) deficiency of water
- и) flaky rocks
- к) marble and slate
- л) gneiss

### 29. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, используя следующие слова:

### cleave cleaves cleavage

- 1. Metamorphic rocks which have a schistose structure can ... .
- 2. As a result of splitting ... is formed.
- 3. Generally speaking, the constituents of gneisses are distributed in bands or layers and the rock ... easily.

### relate related relationship relating (to)

- 1. The ... between rock pressure and temperature is interdependent.
- 2. The role of water in metamorphism can be characterized at least by four variable geologically ... parameters.
  - 3. These parameters ... to each other.
- 4. At the Institute the students study the full range of subjects ... to mining, geology as well as mining mechanics.
- 30. a) Переведите следующие сочетания слов и предложения, обращая внимание на перевод прилагательных в сравнительной степени:

to observe the higher temperature at day time and the lower temperature at night

to become wider and deeper

to cause more complex and varied changes

to penetrate deeper

to become more and more destroyed

to decompose at a slower rate

There are deeper and wider cracks.

The action of plants is even more destructive.

### б) Переведите сочетания слов с прилагательными и наречнями в сравнительной степени, обращая винмание на случая усиления сравнения:

to be more than 0.5 mm

to intrude into older pre-existing rocks

to have even finer grains

less than 0.5 mm

to form smaller rock masses

to be much longer

to cool much more rapidly

to cool more slowly

to crystallize to a larger-grain size

coarse-grained intrusive rocks

### 31. а) Подберите из списков А и Б близкие по значению слова:

- A. 1. band
  - 2. cleave
  - 3. constituent
  - 4. foliated
  - 5. be like
  - 6. permit
  - 7. crack
  - 8. occur
  - 9. rate
  - 10. dimension

- B. a) allow (let)
  - 6) size
  - B) fissure
  - r) take place
  - д) speed
  - e) laver
  - x) split
  - 3) component
  - и) flaky
  - k) be similar to

### б) Подберите из списков А и Б противоположные по значению слова.

- A. 1. deep
  - 2. cool
  - 3. slowly
  - 4. vast
  - 5. extrusive
  - 6. like
  - 7. high-grade
  - 8. common
  - 9. excess
  - 10. foliated

- Б. a) cleavage
  - б) shallow
  - B) low-grade
  - r) non-foliated
  - д) rapidly
  - e) unlike
  - x) intrusive
  - 3) deficiency
  - и) small
  - k) heat
  - л) uncommon

32. а) Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов с причастнем прошедшего времени в функции правого определения и переведите их.

Образец: The equipment **used** is ... — используемое оборудование является ...

- 1. New sources of fuel **described** included ....
- 2. Modern colliery visited used ... .
- 3. Economic achievements written about are ....
- 4. Average coal output of the quarry designed will reach ....
- б) Прочитайте следующие предложения. Найдите в каждом из них групну «подлежащее-сказуемое». Определите функции слов с суффиксом -ed:
- 1. The prospecting party provided with new equipment planned to begin its work in spring.
- 2. The prospecting party provided new data on useful minerals discovered in the region.
  - 3. The prospecting party is provided with new equipment.
- 4. The rocks described represented the oldest portion of the Earth's crust.
- Заполните пропуски в предложениях, унотребив данный в скобках глагол в соответствующем времени и залоге:
- 1. Scientists and engineers ... computers in their work. Computers ... in different fields of science and engineering. (to apply)
- 2. Materials for sedimentary rocks ... fragments of pre-existing rocks. Conglomerate, sandstone and shale ... into the group of sedimentary rocks. (to include)
- 3. Geophysicists ... the changes which take place deep in the Earth. Many of these changes develop at such a slow rate that they ... only with the help of modern instruments and computers. (to observe)
- 4. Water greatly ... the decomposition of rocks. It is quite obvious that weathering ... by the action of water. (to facilitate)
- 34. Определите, какие функции в предложении выполняют совпадающие по форме выделенные слова. Переведите предложения:
- 1. The term "prospecting" includes the whole range of geological work *directed* to discovering deposits of valuable minerals. The Moscow Mining Academy *directed* the activities of the Academy's research institutions.

- 2. Limestones occupied vast areas of the Earth's surface. It is quite obvious that the regions occupied by limestones have been covered by seas.
- 3. Modern deposits of Kamchatka volcanoes investigated by Russian geologists show that volcanism is active there. The Institute of Volcanology of the Siberian Department of the Academy of Sciences investigated friable (рыхлый) volcanic deposits of Kamchatka.
- 4. The clayey mass *obtained* by the decomposition of orthoclase is white and is called kaolin. Chemists *obtained* phosphorus from phosphorite.
- 35. Переведите предложения, обращая винмание на неревод причастия прошедшего времени.
  - Образец 1: The mining method used depends on many factors. → Используемый метод разработ-ки зависит от многих факторов.
- 1. The problems discussed are connected with the investigations of the Earth's crust depths.
- 2. Metamorphic rocks described represent the oldest part of the Earth's crust.
- 3. The process of metamorphism mentioned above creates such minerals as tremolite, sillimanite and others which are uncommon in sedimentary and igneous rocks.
- 4. In all the mines visited automated computerised control systems were used.
- 5. A new system of planning employed gives an opportunity of supplying correct information quickly which is essential for management control of modern mines.
  - Образец 2: When burnt, coal produced heat.  $\rightarrow \Pi pu$  сжигании уголь выделяет тепло.
  - 1. If disturbed, rocks cleave easily into separate plates.
  - 2. When needed the additional experiments are carried out.
- 3. When subjected to pressure, heat and chemically active fluids, various rocks in the Earth's crust are transformed into metamorphic rocks.
- 36. Найдите в тексте Б и выпишите причастия прошедшего времени в функции правого определения.
  - 37. Переведите предложения, используя сочетания слов:
  - to be formed; to belong to; to be like; to be of value; to give an opportunity

of; unlike; to be of importance; pre-existing rocks; schistose structure; to determine

- 1. Метаморфические породы образовались из извержен-ных и осадочных пород.
- 2. Гнейс, сланец, мрамор и другие породы относятся к группе метаморфических пород.
- 3. Гнейс похож на гранит, но, в отличие от гранита, он имеет слоистую структуру.
- 4. Вообще говоря, описанные метаморфические породы имеют большое значение, так как их структура дает возможность установить следы существовавщих ранее пород.

### 38. Задайте вопросы по образну.

Образеи:

Metamorphic rocks are mostly found in the regions of mountain belts. (where?)  $\rightarrow$  Where are metamorphic rocks mostly found?

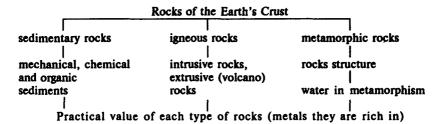
- 1. Metamorphic rocks have been developed from earlier igneous and sedimentary rocks. (what rocks?)
- 2. The constituents of gneisses are distributed in bands or layers. (how?)
- 3. Mica and chlorite cause the rock to split into thin sheets. (what materials?)
  - 4. The structure of metamorphic rocks is of importance. (why?)
  - 39. Закончите предложения подходящими по смыслу словами из текста Б:
  - 1. As for the origin of metamorphic rocks they ....
  - 2. When we say that a mineral has a schistose structure it means ....
- 3. It should be noted that the role of water in the formation of metamorphic rocks is great. It is known that high-grade metamorphic rocks are characterized by the absence of water while medium-grade rocks ....
- 4. Geologists should know every trace of the original structure of metamorphic rocks because ... .

### 40. Суммируйте содержание текста Б, используя слова в скобках:

- 1. The process of metamorphism. (to mean, to show, to undergo changes, to be transformed, to call)
- 2. The role of water in the formation of metamorphic rocks. (to be interdependent, to be related to, in such a way, generally speaking, to be characterized by)

- 3. The difference between foliated and non-foliated metamorphic rocks. (flaky, to cause, to split into, to cleave)
- 4. The structure of metamorphic rocks. (to be of importance, trace, pre-existing rocks, to give an opportunity of)
- 41. Расскажите коротко (8-10 предложений), что вы знаете о горимх мородах в земной коре, об их происхождении, залегании и минералах, которыми они богаты. Используйте данную ниже схему и следующие разговорные формулы:

as far as I know; as is known; as for; I'd like to say a few words about ...; it should be noted that ...; as a rule; generally speaking и др.



B

42. Прочитайте текст В без словаря и скажите, о чем он.

#### Слова для понимания текста:

 profit
 —
 прибыль, польза

 residual
 —
 осадочный

 alloy
 —
 сплав

 cast iron
 —
 чугун

### TEKCT B

Minerals that make up rocks, are defined as inorganic substances which occur naturally and have a definite chemical composition and physical properties which vary within known limits.

The major properties are colour, crystal form, hardness, cleavage and others. Cleavage is one of the most diagnostically useful mineralogical properties which can be found throughout the mineral.

Minerals of use to man can be grouped into two broad categories: 1) metals, such as aluminium, copper, gold, silver, iron, tin, platinum, chromium, nickel, lead and zinc, and 2) non-metallic minerals, such as diamonds, salt, limestone, cement, sulphur, and asbestos. When minerals occur so that they can be worked at a profit they are called ore deposits. Mineral deposits are seldom equally rich throughout.

Economic minerals are those which are of economic importance and include both metallic and non-metallic minerals.

Most minerals consist of several elements. Such elements are oxygen, silicon, titanium, aluminium, iron, magnesium, calcium, sodium, potassium and hydrogen. They make up more than 99 per cent by weight of all the rock-forming minerals. Of these, aluminium, iron and magnesium are industrial metals. The other metals are present in small quantities, mostly in igneous rocks.

For example, iron is one of the most abundant metals in the Earth's crust. There are three important classes of iron deposits: deposits associated with igneous rocks; residual deposits and sedimentary deposits. Iron deposits associated with igneous rocks are usually small but very rich bodies either of haematite or magnetite. Large concentrations have been successfully mined in Pennsylvania (the USA) and in the Russian Federation.

Residual deposits of iron minerals are formed wherever weathering occurs. Iron deposits formed this way are very widespread. It should be stressed that the residual deposits were among the first to be exploited by man.

Sedimentary iron deposits make up most of the world's current production.

As the essential component of every variety of steel, iron is obviously the most important of all industrial metals. It has played a large part in the development of our modern civilization. Iron ores are mainly used for producing cast iron, steels and ferro-alloys. From a scientific point of view, iron's most important property is that it becomes magnetized.

The magnetic iron ore is the main wealth of the Kursk Magnetic Anomaly (KMA). It is necessary to say that only in the last century was the secret of the unusual magnetism of enormous iron ore masses discovered underground.

Iron fields are worked by surface mining which is more economical. But the KMA is rich not only in iron ores. Its deposits contain bauxite, phosphorite, cement, sand and clays.

- 43. Разделите текст В на логические части. В каждой части текста найдите предложение, нередающее ее основную мысль. Озаглавьте каждую часть текста В.
  - 44. Найдите в тексте В ответы на следующие вопросы:
  - 1. Why is cleavage the most important property of minerals?
  - 2. How can ore deposits be defined?

- 3. What are iron ores used for?
- 4. What is the KMA rich in?
- 45. Найдите в тексте информацию по следующим вопросам:
- 1. The main groups of minerals.
- 2. The composition of minerals.
- 3. The important classes of iron ore deposits.
- 4. Industrial importance of iron ores.
- 5. The characteristic feature of the KMA.
- 46. Определите, какой из трех заголовков наиболее соответствует содержанию текста В:
  - 1. Mineral Deposits.
  - 2. The Composition of Minerals.
  - 3. Iron Ores of Importance to Man.
- 47. Расскажите, какая информация из текста В была для вас новой. Отметьте, какие факты вам были уже известны.
  - 48. Переведите текст со словарем:

### New Discoveries about the "Blue Planet"

Specialists from many ground services have assessed the practical use of observations from outer space. The most effective use of the data obtained was made in the field of geology.

A look from outer space identified fundamentally new geological objects which had not been previously studied or mapped. The satellites helped establish the location of abyssal fractures stretching over hundreds and thousands of kilometres and cutting across the whole systems of folds, platforms and the ocean bed. They penetrate deep into the Earth and often act as supply canals of fusions and mineral-enriched solutions. About 20 such abvssal fractures have been identified on the territory of Russia. Successful development of space research makes it possible to survey the Earth's resources from space by satellites. Besides, the surveys by satellites give us information on other parts of the solar system. This has given rise to a new science of "geology of planets" called astrogeology. All this has greatly expanded the viewpoint of the geologist. At the present astronomy, meteorology, oceanography geology, time geophysics are coming closer together and scientists believe that such combination of sciences must be used together to study the whole Earth.

#### UNIT 6 Sources of Energy

А. Грамматика.

Герундий (The Gerund).

Texcm A.

Fossil Fuels.

Б. Грамматика.

Причастие настоящего времени (The Present Participle).

Текст Б.

Coal and Its Classification.

B. Texcm B.

Дискуссия. Энергия и жизнь.

### ГРАММАТИКА

### Герундий (The Gerund)

Герундий — это особая неличная форма глагола, сочетаюшая в себе свойства существительного и глагола. Герундий называет действие: образуется прибавлением - ing к основе глагола: to read — reading чтение: to choose — choosing выбор; to heat heating нагревание и др.

Перечислим основные особенности герундия:1

1. За герундием может следовать относящееся к нему прямое дополнение:

a new collierv.

They began designing Они начали проектировать новую шахту.

- 2. У герундия не может быть артиклей или определений, выраженных прилагательными.
  - 3. Герундий не имеет правого определения с предлогом of.
  - 4. Герундий не имеет формы множественного числа.
- 5. Перед герундием может употребляться притяжательное местоимение или существительное в притяжательном падеже:

Об отличии герундия от совпадающего с ним по форме причастия настоящего времени см. раздел Б.

We know of his taking part in the project.

Мы знаем о его участии в этом проекте.

6. Герундий может выполнять функцию подлежащего в предложении (иногда с зависимыми словами):

Cutting coal is performed Подрубка угля осуществляby cutting chains.

ется режущими цепями.

7. Если перед герундием стоит предлог, то он выступает в функции обстоятельства. Перед герундием употребляются следующие предлоги: on (upon) no, nocne; after nocne, before neped, at при, by путем, при помощи, посредством, without без, instead об вместо и др.

Before entering the Mining Institute the students may take a preliminary year's course.

До поступления в горный институт (Перед тем как поступить в горный институт) студенты могут поступить на годичные подготовительные курсы.

Many different factors are taken into account in choosing a prospecting method.

Много различных факторов принимается во внимание при выборе метода развед-KW.

В русском языке герундию или герундиальной группе с предлогом соответствуют: существительное с предлогом, деепричастие или придаточное предложение. Рассмотрим несколько способов перевода на русский язык одного предложения, содержащего герундий с предлогом:

By introducing powerful rotary excavators it is possible to increase the daily output of the quarry.

- 1. Внедряя мощные роторные экскаваторы, можно увеличить сугочную производительность карьера.
- 2. Путем внедрения мощных роторных экскаваторов можно увеличить суточную производительность карьера.

 Внедрением мощных роторных экскаваторов можно увеличить суточную производительность карьера.

Существуют простые и сложные формы герундия:

Форма	Действительный залог	Страдательный залог	Значение
Indefinite (Simple)	reading	being read	Выражает действие, од- новременное с действи- ем глагола-сказуемого, или действие, относя- щееся к будущему.
Perfect	having read	having been read	Выражает действие, предшествующее дейст- вию глагола-сказуемого.

The mine cars are emptied without being stopped.

Вагонетки разгружаются без остановки (не останавливаясь).

В сложном герундиальном обороте герундий выражает действие, которое совершает лицо (или предмет), выраженное притяжательным местоимением или существительным в притяжательном падеже, стоящим перед герундием. Такой оборот переводится на русский язык дополнительным придаточным предложением с союзами что; то, что; о том, чтобы; в том, что. При переводе герундий становится сказуемым, а притяжательное местоимение (или существительное в притяжательном падеже) подлежащим придаточного предложения:

We know of computers' being used in underground mining.

Мы знаем о том, что счетновычислительные машины используются в шахтах.

### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

- 1. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:
- [o] 'fossil, 'solid, 'water, a'tomic, rock
- [o:] source, raw, form, 'former, 'faulting
- [a:] 'carbon, 'charcoal, past, part
- [ə:] re'fer, world, word, term, burn, 'purpose
- [æ] 'natural, 'sandstone, 'category, 'absence, 'latter
- [ei] a'vailable, 'gaseous, shale, main, de'cay, clay

[ou] — coke, a'go, 'folding, most [so] — air, 'area, 'varv, 'various

### б) Прочитайте следующие слова и заномните их произволение:

ancient ['einfənt], conglomerate [kən'glomərit], dolomite ['doləmait], gaseous ['geizjəs], gases ['gæsiz], group [gru:p], hydrogen ['haidrədʒən], methane ['meen], nitrogen ['naitrədʒən], oxygen ['oksidʒən], sulphur ['sʌlfə]

2. Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.

ассимиля [ə'kju:mjulelt] и накапливать; скопляться

ancient ['einfənt] а древний, старинный; ant modern

associate [a'soufieit] v связывать, соединять, ассоциироваться; syn connect, link

burn [bə:n] (burnt [bə:nt]) v cжигать; гореть; жечь

charcoal ['tfo:koul] и древесный уголь

convenient [kən'vi:njənt] а удобный. полхоляший

crude [kru:d] а сырой, неочишенный

dig [dig] (dug [dлg]) и добывать; копать; digger и угольный экскаватор; землеройная машина

divide [di'vaid] v делить; (from) отнелять; разделять

evidence ['evidens] n доказательство; очевидность; признак(и)

fossil ['fɔsɪl] а окаменелый, ископаемый; п нскопаемое (органического происхождения); окаменелость

heat [hi:t] v нагревать; n тепло-

liquid ['likwid] а жидкий; п жидкость; ant solid

manufacture [.mænju: fæktsə] v изготовлять, производить; svn produce

mudstone ['mAdstoun] n аргиллит

purpose ['po:pos] n цель; намеpeние; syn aim, goal shale [[ell] n глинистый сланец

the former ... the latter первый (из вышеупомянутых) последний (из двух названных)

### 3. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

the equipment available for scientific observations fossil fuel solid fuel crude oil abundant in mudstone and limestone small amounts of charcoal and coke to be composed of ancient rocks

dressing (concentration) plants
mine safety
liquid fuel
manufactured fuel
any direct evidence of the deposit
carbon-containing substances
plant products
peat accumulation
sources of fuel
shale and limestone

4. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

natural gas; atomic energy; geologic past; the two main groups of rocks; the different categories of solid fuels; the basis of practically all natural fuels; the small amount of other elements; to be associated with water and gas; porous sedimentary rocks; geological formations; the most efficient fuel and raw materials; gaseous fuel; high thermal efficiency; to be derived from petroleum

5. Прочитайте текст А и скажите, какие виды органического топлива в нем описываются:

### **TEKCT A**

#### Fossil Fuels

The chief sources of energy available to man today are oil, natural gas, coal, water power and atomic energy. Coal, gas and oil represent energy that has been concentrated by the decay of organic materials (plants and animals) accumulated in the geologic past. These fuels are often referred to as fossil fuels.

The word fossil (derived from the Latin fodere "to dig up") originally referred to anything that was dug from the ground, particularly a mineral. Today the term fossil generally means any direct evidence of past life, for example, the footprints of ancient animals. Fossils are usually found in sedimentary rocks, although sometimes they may be found in igneous and metamorphic rocks as well. They are most abundant in mudstone, shale and limestone, but fossils are also found in sandstone, dolomite and conglomerate.

Most fuels are carbon-containing substances that are burned in air. In burning fuels give off heat which is used for different purposes.

Fuels may be solid, liquid and gaseous. Solid fuels may be divided into two main groups, natural and manufactured. The former category includes coal, wood, peat and other plant products. The latter category includes coke and charcoal obtained by heating coal in the absence of air.

Liquid fuels are derived almost from petroleum. In general, natural petroleum, or crude oil, as it is widely known, is the basis of practically all industrial fuels. Petroleum is a mixture of hundreds of different hydrocarbons — compounds composed of hydrogen and carbon — together with the small amount of other elements such as sulphur, oxygen and nitrogen. Petroleum is usually associated with

water and natural gas. It is found in porous sedimentary rocks where the geological formation allowed the oil to collect from a wide area. Petroleum is one of the most efficient fuels and raw materials.

Of gaseous fuels the most important are those derived from natural gas, chiefly methane or petroleum. Using gaseous fuels makes it possible to obtain high thermal efficiency, ease of distribution and control. Gas is the most economical and convenient type of fuels. Today gas is widely utilized in the home and as a raw material for producing synthetics.

Scientists consider that a most promising source of natural resources may be the floor of the sea, a subject which now has become an important field of research.

Generally speaking, all types of fossil fuels described in the text are of great economic importance as they represent the sources of energy the man uses today.

### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста.
   Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. Coal, water power and atomic energy are the only sources of energy available to man today.
  - 2. Coal, wood and peat represent natural group of solid fuels.
  - 3. As a rule fossil fuels are found in sedimentary rocks.
  - 4. Crude oil is widely used for producing solid fuels.
  - 5. Petroleum can be found in porous sedimentary rocks.
  - 6. Gas is used to produce synthetic materials.
  - 7. Not all types of fossil fuels burn.
  - 7. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:
  - 1. What fuels are often referred to as fossil fuels?
  - 2. What does the word fossil mean?
  - 3. What rocks are most abundant in fossil fuels?
  - 4. What types of fossil fuels do you know?
- 5. Is coke a natural or manufactured solid fuel? And what can you say about coal and peat?
  - 6. How are coke and charcoal produced?
  - 7. What rocks is petroleum usually associated with?
  - 8. What are the advantages of gaseous fuels?

### а) Найдите в правой колопке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетавий слов.

- 1. fossil fuel
- 2. raw material
- 3. crude oil
- 4. the chief sources of energy
- 5. to refer to
- 6. any direct or indirect evidence of the deposit
- 7. shale and limestone
- 8. carbon-containing materials
- 9. wood and peat
- 10. the small amount of mudstone к) относиться к (чему-л.);

- а) дерево и торф
- б) небольшое количество аргиллита
- в) органическое топливо
- г) сланец и известняк
- д) сырье
- е) материалы, содержащие углерод
- ж) главные источники энергии
- з) любые прямые или косвенные признаки месторождения
- и) сырая (неочищенная) нефть
- к) относиться к (чему-л.);ссылаться на (что-л.)

### б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов.

- 1. древесный уголь и кокс
- 2. жидкое топливо
- 3. накапливать
- 4. собирать данные
- 5. происходить от
- 6. получать хорошие результаты
- 7. богатый горючими сланцами
- Я. состоять из известняков

- a) to collect data
- 5) charcoal and coke
- B) to be composed of limestones
- r) liquid fuel
- д) to accumulate
- e) to derive from
- x) to obtain good results
- 3) abundant in oil shales

## 9. Определите, какой частью речи являются выделенные слова. Переведите предложения:

- 1. Mineral fuels such as oil, oil shale, gas and coal are commonly called fossil fuels.
- 2. These fossils are organic materials accumulated in the geologic past.
- 3. As a rule oil **deposits** are usually associated with water and natural gas.
  - 4. Salt deposits form folds in which petroleum can be found.
  - 5. Liquid is one of the states of matter.
  - 6. Liquid fuels are derived from petroleum.
- 7. Coke manufacture depends on certain (определенный) grades of coal.
- 8. Chemical plants manufacture synthetic materials from natural gas.
  - 10. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, используя приведенные слова. accumulation accumulate accumulated
- 1. Fossil fuels were formed as a result of the ... of vegetable matter.

- 2. These fossil fuels are organic materials that ... in the geologic past.
- 3. Coal, for example, deposited from vegetable remains ... in swamp (болото) areas millions of years ago.
- 4. As is known, any natural ... of mineral of some volume in the Earth's crust is a mineral deposit.
- 11. Прочитайте следующие предложения. Найдите в каждом из них группу «подлежащее сказуемое». Определите, чем выражено подлежащее. Переведите предложения:
  - 1. Using coal as a fuel began in the twelfth century.
- 2. Extracting useful minerals by underground methods will continue in future.
- 3. Winning coal from deep horizons is difficult due to high temperatures.
- 4. Producing oil from shale has been successfully carried out for many years.
- 12. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на перевод выделенных слов:
  - 1. Electricity is a source of light as well as of heat.
- 2. As igneous rocks and their veins are rich in mineral deposits, they are very important to man.
- 3. As is known, fossils are found in sedimentary rocks although they may be found in igneous rocks as well.
- 4. Mine cars are unloaded (разгружать) as they pass through a loading point.
- 5. As far as petroleum is concerned it is associated with water and natural gas.
- 6. Nowadays natural gas is utilized as a raw material for manufacturing synthetics.
- 7. As a rule open-cast mining is used when the deposit lies near the surface.
- 13. Прочитайте следующие предложения. Обратите внимание на пере-вод герундия с предлогами by, for, in, of, on, without:
- 1. The progress in the coal industry was achieved by mechanizing and re-equipping underground operations.
- 2. Brown coal and lignite are used as raw materials for producing coke and chemical products.
- 3. The problem of extracting geothermal energy is under consideration now.

- 4. On re-utilizing the wastes (отходы) it will be possible to make the extractive industries more efficient.
- 5. Geologists have got good results in prospecting for mineral resources in the sea.
- 14. a) Назовите, в каких предложениях употреблен герундий. Укажите определяющие его признаки:
  - 1. Charcoal is used for producing high grades of cast iron.
- 2. Coke is formed in the process of heating certain grades of coal in the absence of air.
- 3. New concentration plants have been built for the processing of non-ferrous and ferrous metals.
- 4. Many minerals undergo changes by taking water in their molecule.
- 5. The form of a mineral body is taken into consideration in selecting the method of mining.
- 6. In prospecting for useful minerals, aerial photography will play an important part.
- 7. Using modern mining equipment allowed the miners to increase the output of coal.
- 8. The training of mining specialists now takes place in proximity to industrial enterprises.
- 9. It is difficult to understand the nature of fossils without studying their origin.
- б) Найдите в тексте A предложения, в которых употреблен герундий. Переведите предложения.
- 15. Переведите предложения, используя следующие слова и сочетания слов:

to be of great importance; to be the basis for; the national economy; to represent; there is; to manufacture; gaseous

- 1. Уголь, нефть и природный газ старейшие источники энергии. Они представляют собой горючее топливо органического происхождения.
- 2. Есть (существует) жидкое, твердое и газообразное топливо.
  - 3. Уголь сырье для получения кокса.
- 4. Сырая нефть является основой для изготовления промышленного жидкого топлива.
- 5. Использование природного газа имеет большое значение для народного хозяйства страны.

- 16. Закончите предложения подходящими по смыслу словами из текста А:
- 1. As for the origin of fossil fuels they have been formed by ....
- 2. According to the latest information the main sources of energy are ....
  - 3. As is known fossil fuels are mostly associated with ....
  - 4. As far as petroleum is concerned, it can be found in ....
  - 5. Generally speaking, all types of fuel are important ....
- 17. Выразите несогласие и подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста А. Используйте предлагаемые разговорные формулы:

as is known; to my mind; in my opinion; on the contrary; as for ...; I'd like to say that ...; it seems to be wrong; I can't agree with you

- 1. The meaning of the term fossil is unknown.
- 2. Fossil fuels may be found only in sedimentary rocks.
- 3. Coke represents natural solid fuel.
- 4. Petroleum contains only hydrocarbons.
- 5. Gas is not so convenient type of fuel as coal.
- 18. Суммируйте содержание текста А, используя слова в скобках.
- 1. Fossil fuels as a source of energy, their origin. (to represent, energy, the decay of organic materials, to accumulate, to be found in, to be abundant in)
- 2. The types of fossil fuels. Solid fuels, natural and manufactured, their usage. (to divide into, to include, to obtain)
- 3. Liquid fuels. Petroleum, its origin, occurrence and usage. (to be derived from, to contain, to be associated with, to be found in)
- 4. Gaseous fuels and their use in the economy. (to make it possible, to be widely used, to be of importance)
- 19. Продолжите диалог. Используйте разговорные формулы из упражнения 17.
  - A.: I think fossil fuels are the only source of energy today.
  - B.: You are not right because the text says ...
- 20. Расскажите коротко (6-8 предложений) о разных видах топлива и других источниках энергии в промышленности и в быту в вашем городе/районе/республике. Используйте известные вам разговорные формулы.

#### **ГРАММАТИКА**

## Причастие настоящего времени (The Present Participle)

Причастие настоящего времени образуется, как и герундий, прибавлением -ing к основе глагола: to build — building работающий, to use — using использующий, используя. В отличие от герундия, причастие не может выступать в функциях существительного. Эта неличная форма глагола имеет признаки прилагательного и глагола.

Рассмотрим функции причастия настоящего времени в предложении:

Функция	Пример	Перевод
1. Часть сказуемого (входит в состав всех временных форм Continuous и Perfect Continuous)	They are working in the laboratory.	Они <i>работают</i> в ла- боратории.
2. Левое определе- вме (стоит перед определяемым сло- вом), переводится причастием с суф- фиксом -ущ, -ющ, -ащ, -ящ.	at an increasing speed	с увеличивающейся (возрастающей) ско- ростью
3. Правое определение (стоит после определиемого слова, образуя определительный причастный оборот). Переводится на русский язык причастием или определительным придаточным предложением.	Processes leading to the formation of sedimentary rocks are known.  Lava flowed down the hill destroying everything on its way.	Процессы, ведущие (которые ведут) к образованию осадочных пород, известны. Лава текла вниз по колму, разрушая всё на своем пути.
4. Обстоятельство (в предложении сто- ит перед подлежа- щим или после	Designing new ma- chines, engineers pay attention to geologi- cal conditions.	Проектируя новые машины, инженеры обращают внимание на геологические ус- ловия.

Продолжение таблицы

When testing the cutдополнения и обра-Испытывая комбайн, зует обстоятельстter-loader, the engiинженеры применипричастный used modern ли современные мевенный оборот (часто с when methods of control. тоды управления. и while). Переводит-Или: Когда инженеся на русский язык ры испытывали комдеепричастным обобайн, они применяли современные меротом или придамыниот предложетолы управления. нием.

Примечание: Следует помнить, что причастие настоящего времени не может иметь артиклей или других определителей. Наличие у глагольной формы с суффиксом -ing артикля или другого определителя указывает на то, что она является отглагольным существительным:

The working of thick seams by longwall is dangerous.

Разработка мощных пластов сплошной системой опасна.

У причастия настоящего времени (причастие I) имеются формы пассивного залога и перфектные формы, обозначающие действия, которые предшествуют действию, выраженному глаголом-сказуемым (активные и пассивные):

	Active	Passive	
Причастие настоящего времени	using использующий, используя	being used будучи исполь- зованным, бу- дучи использу- емым	Выражает действие, одновременное с действием глагола- сказуемого.
Перфектная форма причастия настоящего времени	having used ucnoльзовав	having been used после того как использова- ли, так как использова- пользовали	Выражает действие, предшествующее действию глаголасказуемого.

Изучите примеры и обратите внимание на способы перевода причастий на русский язык:

Being unable to help in any other way, I gave her some money.

Having finished my homework, I decided to take a walk.

Не будучи в состоянии както помочь ей, я дал ей немного денег.

Закончив делать уроки, я решил прогуляться.

Having been rejected by everybody, he became a monk.

Так как все отвергли его (Будучи отвергнутым всеми), он ушел в монастырь.

## ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

#### 21. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [e] bed, blend, 'smelting, 'general, 'element, do'mestic, 'many
- [i:] peat, heat, 'easy, steel, keep, 'medium
- [A] 'lustre, 'sulphur, some, but, 'other, a'bundant
- [æ] ash, 'value, rank, 'matter, 'calorie, 'active
- [a:] burn, 'surface, 'purpose, re'serves, world, 'furnace
- [5:] store, ac'cording, pro'portion, source
- [a1] dry, pile, kind, pro'vide, 'either, slight, 'slightly
- [ou] low, coke, 'coking, most, though, al'though, smoke
- [a:] large, hard, 'carbon, blast, fast

#### б) Прочитайте названия химических элементов и углей:

carbon ['kg:bən], chromium ['kroumɪəm], cobalt [kə'bɔ:lt], copper ['kɔpə], nickel ['nɪkl], tungsten ['tʌŋstən], lignite ['lɪgnaɪt], bituminous coal [bɪ'tju:mɪnəs 'koul], anthracite ['ænθrəsaɪt], liquefaction [ˌlɪkwɪ'fækʃ(ə)n]

#### Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить вх.

bench [bent]] n слой, пачка (пласта)

**blend** [blend]  $\nu$  смешивать(ся); вклинивать(ся)

combustion [kəm'bʌstʃən] n горение, сгорание; spontaneous combustion самовоспламенение, самовозгорание

continuity [kontl'nju(:)Itl] n непрерывность, неразрывность

domestic [də'mestik] а внутренний; отечественный

estimate ['estiment] v оценивать; ['estimnt] n оценка; смета

fault [fo:lt] п разлом, сдвит (породы); сброс; faulting п образование разрывов или сбросов fold [fould] *п* изгиб, складка, флексура; foulding *п* складчатость, смещение (*пласта*) без разрыва

inflame [in'fleim] v воспламеняться; загорать(ся); inflammable [in'flæməbl] а воспламеняющийся, горючий, огнеопасный; flame [fleim] n пламя

intermediate [.Intəˈmiːdjət] а промежуточный; вспомогательный

liable ['laɪəbi] a (to) подверженный; подлежащий (чему-л.) lustre ['lʌstə] n блеск (угля, ме-

lustre ['lastə] n блеск (угля, ме maлла); lustrous a блестящий

matter ['mætə] n вещество; материя

moisture ['moistfə] n влажность, сырость; влага

parting ['pa:tin] n прослоек plane [plein] n плоскость; bed-

ding plane плоскость напластования

rank [ræŋk] n класс, тип; coai rank группа угля, тип угля regular ['reqiulə] a правильный; непрерывный; ant irregular неправильный; неравномерный; regularity n непрерыв-

ность; правильность similar ['simila] а похожий, сходный; подобный; syn alike, the same as

smelt [smelt] v плавить (руду); выплавлять (металл)

store [sto:] и запасать, хранить на складе; вмещать

strata ['stro:tə] n pl om stratum пласты породы; свита (пластов); формация, напластования породы; syn measures

thickness [' $\theta$ 1knis] n мощность (nласта, жилы)

uniform ['ju:nifo:m] а однородный; равномерный; uniformity п однородность; единообразие

wtilize ['ju:tilaiz] v использовать; syn use, apply, employ volatile ['volatail] a летучий, быстро испаряющийся

### 23. a) Переведите следующие существительные, образованные с номощью суффикса -ity от прилагательных:

irregularity, similarity, uniformity

- б) Заполните пропуски существительными, образованными от выделенных прилагательных:
- 1. As a rule coal beds are *uniform*. They are characterized by the same ... and continuity as other strata of sedimentary origin.
- 2. Although coal is not a true mineral, its formation processes are similar to those of sedimentary rocks. In this case we can speak about their ....
- 3. According to their shape mineral deposits can be classified as regular or *irregular*. Regular deposits include seams and veins while *irregular* deposits include stocks. Coal belongs to regular deposits but it is characterized by ... in thickness.

## 24. Переведите слова с префиксом sub-:

subgroup, subdivision, subsection, subcommittee, substation

## 25. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

liable to spontaneous combustion the most abundant deposits ash and sulphur content coking and non-coking qualities high-rank or low-rank coal as many as 72 elements different bands or benches of various thickness domestic fuel inflammable gas
lustrous metal
brilliant lustre
iron ore smelting
intermediate substance
coal beds
thin layers of clay and shale
folding and faulting
low-volatile bituminous coals

26. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корилми соответствующих слов в русском языке:

coal formation processes; parallel planes; structurally disturbed beds of coal; coal classification; lignite and brown coals; bituminous coal; anthracite or "hard" coal; gasification and carbonification; domestic and industrial purposes of using coal; in briquetted form; to be used intensively; to produce a mixture; researches into new technologies; petrochemical processes

27. Прочитайте текст Б и скажите, какие угли имеют наиболее важное экономическое значение.

#### ТЕКСТ Б

#### Coal and Its Classification

Coal is the product of vegetable matter that has been formed by the action of decay, weathering, the effects of pressure, temperature and time millions of years ago.

Although coal is not a true mineral, its formation processes are similar to those of sedimentary rocks.

Structurally coal beds are geological strata characterized by the same irregularities in thickness, uniformity and continuity as other strata of sedimentary origin. Coal beds may consist of essentially uniform continuous strata or like other sedimentary deposits may be made up of different bands or benches of varying thickness.

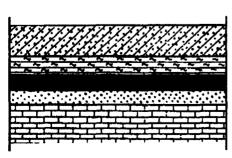


Fig. 3. Seam of coal

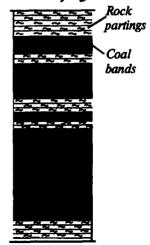


Fig. 4. Complex seam

Thus, in Fig. 3 one can see a seam limited by two more or less parallel planes, a shape which is typical of sedimentary rocks.

The benches may be separated by thin layers of clay, shale, pyrite or other mineral matter, commonly called partings (Fig. 4).

Like other sedimentary rocks coal beds may be structurally disturbed by folding and faulting.

According to the amount of carbon coals are classified into: brown coals, bituminous coals and anthracite. Brown coals are in their turn subdivided into lignite and common brown coal.

Although carbon is the most important element in coal, as many as 72 elements have been found in some coal deposits, including lithium, chromium, cobalt, copper, nickel, tungsten and others.

Lignite is intermediate in properties between peat and bituminous coal, containing when dry about 60 to 75 per cent of carbon and a variable proportion of ash. Lignite is a low-rank brown-to-black coal containing 30 to 40 per cent of moisture. Developing heat it gives from 2,500 to 4,500 calories. It is easily inflammable but burns with a smoky flame. Lignite is liable to spontaneous combustion. It has been estimated that about 50 per cent of the world's total coal reserves are lignitic.

Brown coal is harder than lignite, containing from 60 to 65 per cent of carbon and developing greater heat than lignite (4,000-7,000 calories). It is very combustible and gives a brown powder. Bituminous coal is the most abundant variety, varying from medium to high rank. It is a soft, black, usually banded coal. It gives a black powder and contains 75 to 90 per cent of carbon. It weathers only slightly and may be kept in open piles with little danger of spontaneous combustion if properly stored. Medium-to-low volatile bituminous coals may be of coking quality. Coal is used intensively in blast furnaces for smelting iron ore. There are non-coking varieties of coal.

As for the thickness, the beds of this kind of coal are not very thick (1-1.5 metres). The great quantities of bituminous coal are found in the Russian Federation.

Anthracite or "hard" coal has a brilliant lustre containing more than 90 per cent of carbon and low percentage of volatile matter. It is used primarily as a domestic fuel, although it can sometimes be blended with bituminous grades of coal to produce a mixture with improved coking qualities. The largest beds of anthracite are found in Russia, the USA and Great Britain.

Coal is still of great importance for the development of modern industry. It may be used for domestic and industrial purposes. Being the main source of coke, coal is widely used in the iron and steel industry. Lignite, for example either in the raw state or in briquetted form, is a source of industrial carbon and industrial gases.

There is a strong tendency now for increased research into new technologies to utilize coal. No doubt, coal will be used as a raw material for the chemical industry and petrochemical processes. All these processes involve coal conversion which include gasification designed to produce synthetic gas from coal as the basis for hydrogen manufacture, liquefaction (разжижение) for making liquid fuel from coal and other processes.

#### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 28. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. Anthracite coals may be divided into lignite and common brown coal.
- 2. Coals are ranked according to the percentage of carbon they contain.
- 3. Peat, with the least amount of carbon is the lowest rank, then comes lignite or brown coal.
- 4. Brown coal is hard and it is not liable to spontaneous combustion.
- 5. Bituminous coal weathers rapidly and one cannot keep it in open piles.
- 6. Being intensively used in the iron and steel industry bituminous coal varies from medium to high rank.
- 7. Anthracite or hard coal, the highest in percentage of carbon, can be blended with bituminous grades of coal.

## 29. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What is the classification of coal based on?
- 2. Is carbon the only element in coal? (Prove it.)
- 3. Is lignite intermediate in properties between peat and bituminous coal?
  - 4. What heat value does lignite develop when burnt?
  - 5. What coals are liable to spontaneous combustion?
  - 6. What is the difference between lignite and brown coal?
  - 7: Is biturhinous coal high- or low-volatile?

- 8. Does anthracite contain 90 per cent of carbon?
- 9. Where are the largest deposits of anthracite found? And what can you say about bituminous coal?
  - 10. What do you know about the utilization of coal?

## 30. а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:

- 1. spontaneous combustion
- 2. moisture and ash content
- 3. the most abundant variety of coal
- 4. in its turn
- 5. the amount of volatile matter
- 6. easily inflammable gas
- 7. brilliant lustre
- 8. to smelt iron ore
- 9. high-rank coal
- 10. a smoky flame

- а) легковоспламеняющийся газ
- б) высокосортный уголь
- в) плавить железную руду
- г) самовозгорание
- д) содержание влаги и золы
- е) дымное пламя
- ж) наиболее широко распространенные угли
- з) яркий блеск
- и) в свою очерель
- к) количество летучих веществ

#### б) Найдите в правой колонке антлийские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов;

- 1. тип угля
- 2. некоксующийся уголь
- 3. доменная печь
- 4. содержание углерода
- 5. смешиваться с другими углями
- б. улучшенного качества
- 7. складировать уголь
- 8. теплотворная способность
- 9. быстро выветриваться

- a) heat value
- б) amount of carbon
- B) coal rank
- r) to store coal
- д) to weather rapidly
- e) non-coking coal
- ж) blast furnace
- 3) of improved quality
- и) to blend with other coals

# Подберите соответствующие `словарные определения для названий разных видов топлива:

## anthracite lignite bituminous coal peat

- 1. A low-rank brown-to-black coal containing 30 to 40 per cent of moisture. It is liable to spontaneous combustion.
- 2. A soft brown deposit in which plant structures can easily be seen. It has the least amount of carbon.
- 3. The main feature of this grade of coals is its low percentage of volatile matter and high carbon content.
- 4. This coal has more than 14 per cent of volatile content. There are non-coking and coking varieties, the latter being used for coke manufacture.
  - 32. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, используя следующие слова:
    - a) continue continuous continuity

- 1. Fossil fuels ... to play an important role in the national economy of the country.
- 2. Like other sedimentary strata coal beds are characterized by uniformity and ....
  - 3. In mining bedded deposits ... faces (забои) are used.

## 6) disturb disturbance disturbed

- 1. Any change in the normal bedding of a seam (fault or fold) is called a ....
  - 2. Coal seams may be structurally ... by faulting or folding.
- 3. Folds ... coal seams without a break and sometimes faults ... them with a break.

#### 33. Определите число выделенных существительных:

these men; 25 feet; natural phenomenon; their analyses; higher educational establishments; coal stratum; new formula; these apparatuses; the data of investigations

- 34. Прочитайте предложения, найдите в них -ing-формы. Скажите, как они называются и в какой функции употреблены в предложении. Переведите предложения.
  - 1. Coal beds may consist of different bands of varying thickness.
- 2. Laser is used in mining. This is a more recent development replacing theodolites in surveying.
- 3. Speaking about the future of coal, it is necessary to note the production of liquid fuels such as gas and oil from coal.
- 35. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на перевод -ing-форм. Как называются эти формы? Каковы их функции?
- a)1. The highest output of coal excluding seams of 6° to 15° is got from thick seams.
- 2. The ventilation air *flowing* through the mine has been greatly increased.
- 3. It should be noticed that the theory of *prospecting* and exploration is a link *connecting* specialists in two fields of *mining*: the exploration geologist and the *mining* engineer.
- 4. Folds, faults and fissures *influencing* the distribution and localization of mineralization are observed in practically all ore fields.
- 6)1. Minerals and rocks are subjected to a process of constant development depending on geological conditions.
  - 2. Studying and exploring deep deposits, it is important to es-

tablish the relation between the structures of different sequences (последовательность) controlling their localization.

- 3. Geophysical methods sometimes make it possible to determine the thickness of iron ore deposits, and under favourable conditions even to establish the composition of the ores as well, thereby decreasing the number of exploratory openings to a minimum.
- 4. Depending on the structural conditions, there are several types of ore fields.
- **B)** 1. Studies of intrusive dykes are most important when *investigating* the structure of ore field and *establishing* the genesis of the deposit.
- 2. While studying at the engineering institutes, every student is to go through practical training at mines, open-pits, quarries or dressing plants.
- 3. When making the geological map, the geologists study all the data of ground and aerial geological surveys.
- 36. Выразите несогласие и подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста Б. Используйте предлагаемые разговорные формулы:

to my mind; in my opinion; on the contrary; I'd like to say a few words about; it seems to be wrong; it is quite obvious that; as for; as I know

- 1. Lignite is a high-rank coal, containing about 90 per cent of carbon. It is slightly liable to spontaneous combustion.
- 2. Bituminous coals cannot be stored in open piles. These coals are primarily used for domestic purposes.
- 3. Anthracites are soft coals being used mainly for metallurgical purposes. In future coal will be used only for domestic purposes.
- 37. Суммируйте содержание текста Б, используя следующие слова и выражения:

coal ranks; carbon and volatile matter content; moisture content; heat effect; liability to spontaneous combustion; coking quality; the use of different types of coal in industry

## 38. Подготовьте сообщение на тему:

Different types of coals and their comparison with each other (for example, lignite and anthracite or anthracite and brown coal, etc.), their carbon content, heat value, liability to spontaneous combustion and the use of each grade of coal.

- 39. Расскажите, что вы знаете об угольных пластах (рис. 3 и 4). В своем рассказе дайте ответы на следующие вопросы:
  - 1. What do Figures 3 and 4 show?
- 2. What figure shows the seam which consists only of coal bands?
  - 3. Is the coal seam (Fig. 3) horizontal or inclined?
- 4. Is the shape of the seam typical of igneous rocks or sedimentary rocks? What do you know about the structure of sedimentary rocks?
- 5. Can you explain why the coal seam shown in Fig. 4 is called complex? What does the seam consist of?
- 6. What mineral substances may separate coal beds? What do we call them?
  - 7. What is thicker, coal bands or rock partings?

B

40. Прочитайте текст В и кратко передайте его содержание по-русски.

## **TEKCT B**

- 1. For along time coal has been the principal fuel, the main source of thermal and electric energy. Now it continues to play an important part in the economy.
- 2. Coal is the product of vegetable matter that has been formed from the remains of plants and animals accumulated in swamp areas millions of years ago. Although some coals were deposited 4,000,000,000 years ago during the Silurian period, most coals were formed during the Upper and Lower Carboniferous geological epochs about 250,000,000 years ago.
- 3. Coal formation processes are similar to those of sedimentary rocks. Various coal seams can be studied and related geologically to the sedimentary rocks with which they are associated. Coal contains varying amounts of carbon and volatile material as well as impurities such as sulphur, phosphorus, incombustible rock material and moisture.
- 4. The physical characteristics of coal concern the structural aspects of the coal bed and texture. Structurally coal beds are characterized by the same irregularities in thickness, uniformity and continuity as other strata of sedimentary origin. Thickness varies greatly. Coal beds may consist of essentially uniform continuous

strata or like other sedimentary deposits may be made up of bands or benches of varying thickness. The benches may be separated by thin layers of clay, shale, pyrite or other mineral matter, commonly called partings. Like other sedimentary rocks coal beds may be structurally disturbed by folding and faulting.

- 5. Many classifications of coal have been suggested: by geologic age, coking properties, commercial application and chemical composition.
- 6. There exist four main types of coal: anthracite, bituminous, subbituminous, lignite and brown coal. When speaking about the classification of coal based on its nature as rock mineral, scientists distinguish (различать) the following rock varieties or lithotypes such as vitrain, clarain, durain and fusain. These are the four constituents (составная часть) of coal.
- 7. Although the utilization of coal varies widely with rank, three general fields of coal utilization may be distinguished. They are combustion (domestic, industrial, railroads and public utilization), gasification and carbonification (high-temperature coke for metallurgical uses and low-temperature coke for producing smokeless fuel).
- 41. а) В каждом абзаце текста В найдите предложение, передающее его основную мысль.
- б) Укажите, в каком абзаце текста В идет речь о структурной характеристике угля.
  - 42. Расскажите содержание текста В, используя следующие вопросы:
  - 1. What has coal been formed from?
  - 2. What rocks can coal be related to?
  - 3. What does coal contain?
  - 4. What is the structural characteristic of coal?
  - 5. What factors can the classification of coal be based on?
  - 6. What is the role of coal in the national economy of Russia?
- 43. Определите, который из четырех заголовков наиболее соответствует содержанию текста В:
  - 1. The Origin of Coal.
  - 2. The Classification of Coal.
  - 3. Coal as Fossil Fuel.
  - 4. Coal and Its Industrial Application.
- 44. Расскажите, что нового вы узнали из текста В. Какие факты вам были уже известны?

## **ДИСКУССИЯ**

#### Энергия и жизнь

Для успешного участия в дискуссии вам необходимо ознакомиться с содержанием статьи и использовать вашу эрудицию по обсуждаемой проблеме.

#### Слова для понимания текста:

hearth [hd:0] — каминto cope with — справляться с ...bunker — угольный ящикsmoke — дымsoot — сажаshare — часть, доляrevival — возрождениеreinforce — усиливать, подкреплятьexhaustion [Ig'zo:st[ən] — истошение

## Energy in the UK: Changing Demands

Coal was the dominant form of energy used in the UK for over a century. Coal was plentiful and cheap. It has a variety of uses:

- fuel for steam engines,
- fuel for homes, factories and offices,
- the production of gas,
- the production of chemicals.

British homes were designed to cope with coal. Near the back door would be the coal bunker. There were open hearths on which coal and wood fires were burnt.

Open coal fires look very attractive, but they have many problems. Coal is dirty, heavy and difficult to use. Rooms can fill with smoke when a door is opened. When the fire is finished, soot and ash are left.

Alternative forms of energy have become widely available in the UK since the 1960s. Oil, gas and electricity provide most of the country's energy. It is not all bad news for coal, however, because it is still the most important fuel used to generate electricity. New cleaner methods of using coal to heat houses have been developed.

Oil, gas and electricity are much cleaner and easier to use than coal. The price of the different forms of energy is also an important factor:

- During the 1960s oil and gas became cheaper while the price of coal rose. Demand for coal fell dramatically.
- In 1973/74 the Oil Crisis made oil much more expensive. Gas and coal were cheaper. Gas took a larger share of the energy market as the North Sea gasfields were developed. There was even a revival in the use of coal. This was reinforced by the great oil price increases of 1979/80.

• In 1986 oil became much cheaper. Demand for coal fell again.

Price and ease of use have been the major factors affecting the changing energy demand in the UK in the last forty years. In the future the exhaustion of energy sources will become important. The world's oil supplies may not last more than another forty years. Much of the world's oil and gas is located in areas which have suffered conflict, such as the Middle East. Supplies may be cut off from the UK for political reasons, as they were, briefly, during 1956 and 1973. Home energy source, of which coal is the largest, will then become more important for the UK again.

Past experience shows that there are no certainties in demand for energy within the UK. The future may hold many changes.

Выучите фразы, которые используются для того, чтобы узнать чье-либо мнение или выразить свое.

- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Asking .	for opinion		
To one person		To a group of people		
What are your views on? What are your feelings about? What do you think about? What's your opinion about that?		Any reaction to that?  Has anybody strong feelings about  (views on) that?  What's the general view or feeling about that?  Has anybody any comments to make?		
	Giving	g opinion		
Strong	Neutral		Tentative	
I'm sure that I'm convinced that I feel quite sure that It's perfectly clear to me that	I think (believe) that As I see it From a financial point of view The way I see it is that		It seems to me that I'm inclined to think that My inclination would be to	

Распределите роли и примите участие в телевизионной дискуссии «Энергия и жизнь».

ANNOUNCER: Good evening! Dear guests, welcome to our TV studio. Listen and see our program "For Those Who Think". Life and energy is our problem.

The world's energy resources are limited. Nobody knows exactly how much fuel is left. Of course, we have to do something and do it as soon as possible. I'd like to welcome our first guest, Professor Oleg Petrov.

PROFESSOR OLEG PETROV: Well, we are in energy crisis and we'll have to do something quickly. Fossil fuels (coal, oil and natural gas) are rapidly running out. The tragedy is that fossil fuels are too valuable to waste on the production of electricity. I think that nuclear power is the only real alternative. We are getting some electricity from nuclear power already. There has been a lot of protest against nuclear power. But nuclear power-stations will not be as dangerous as some people say if safety regulations in power-stations are very strict.

ANNOUNCER: Thank you, Professor. Our next guest is a member of the campaign against nuclear energy, Mr. Dymov.

MR. DYMOV: Right. I must disagree totally with Professor Petrov. Let's look at the facts. In the case of an accident huge areas are evacuated, and they remain contaminated with radioactivity for years. Radioactivity causes cancer and may affect future generations.

Next, nuclear waste. There is no technology for absolutely safe disposal. Some of this waste will remain active for thousands of years. Is that what you want to leave to your children? And their children's children?

I consider that nuclear energy is expensive, dangerous, and evil, and most of all, absolutely unnecessary.

But Dr. Krimova will be saying more about the problem.

ANNOUNCER: Thank you, Mr. Dymov. Now I'm very pleased to welcome Dr. Krimova, our final speaker. She is the author of several books on alternative technology.

DR. KRIMOVA: Hello! I'd like to begin by agreeing with Mr. Dymov. We can develop alternative sources of power. Instead of burning fossil fuels we should be concentrating on more economic uses of electricity. Electricity can be produced from any source of energy. You can save more by conservation than you can produce for the same money. Unless we do research on solar energy, wind power, wave power, tidal power, etc., our fossil fuels will run out, and we'll all freeze or starve to death. We have to spend much more on research, and don't forget that energy from the sun, the waves and the wind lasts forever. We really won't survive unless we start working on cleaner, safer sources of energy.

ANNOUNCER: Thank you very much, Dr. Krimova. Now we are opening the discussion.

#### На обсуждение выпосятся следующие вопросы:

- 1. What are the problems with coal as a domestic fuel?
- 2. What are the advantages of oil and gas over coal?
- 3. Which energy source increased most between 1973 and 1986 in the UK?
  - 4. Which energy source decreased most between 1973-1986 in the UK?
- 5. Is nuclear power the only alternative to fossil fuels for the production of electricity?
  - 6. Is nuclear energy dangerous and unnecessary?
- 7. How can people develop alternative sources of energy and which ones?

#### Фразы для велущего:

Right, let's get started. Perhaps, you'd like to start. Ann. Just a minute, Peter, let Ann finish what she was saying. We'll come to your point later. Perhaps, you'd like to explain/tell us ... Let's move on ...

## Слова и выражения для участинков:

let's look at the facts I consider that by the way with great interest to rely on (the fossil fuels, oil, coal) world energy reserves look to the future to spend money on new forms of power

I mean listen to the other speakers after all some of the estimates new research conservation of present resources to be fairly optimistic

А теперь выбирайте ведущего и начинайте дискуссию, руководствуясь вопросями, вынесенными на обсуждение, статьей, фразами, приведенными после статьи и на с. 158, а главное, вашей эрудицией и комкретиции знавнями по обсуждаемой проблеме. Желаем успеха!

## UNIT 7 Prospecting and Exploration

А. Грамматика.

 Сравнение функций причастия и герундия (повторение).

Инфинитив (The Infinitive) и его функции в предложении.

Texcm A. I

Prospecting.

Б. Грамматика.

Инфинитивные обороты.

Текст Б.

Exploration of Mineral Deposits.

B. Texcm B

Кроссворд (Crossword).

Интервью с проф. Мортоном.

## A

### ГРАММАТИКА

## 1. Сравнение функций причастия и герундия (повторение)

## Сравнительная таблица функций причастия и герундия

Функция	Герундий	Причастие I
Подлежащее	<b>Driving</b> a car is his hobby.	-
Именная часть сказуемого	His hobby is driving a car.	-
Часть глагольного сказуемого (Con- tinuous)	_	He is driving too fast.
Дополнение	He enjoys driving.	<u> </u>
Определение	I don't like his plan of driving to the country.	The man driving a car is our manager.
Обстоятельство	After <b>driving</b> almost the whole day he felt very tired.	(When/While) driving a car one must be very attentive.

## 2. Инфинитив (The Infinitive) и его функции в предложении

**Инфинитив** — это неличная форма глагола, которая называет действие: **to work** *pa6omamь*, **to drill** *сверлить*, *бурить* и др.

Формальным признаком инфинитива в английском языке является частица **to**. После модальных и вспомогательных глаголов частица **to** перед инфинитивом отсутствует.

Инфинитив имеет следующие формы:

	Active	Passive
Indefinite (Simple) Continuous Perfect Perfect Continuous	to apply to be applying to have applied to have been applying	to be applied  to have been applied

Особое внимание следует обратить на инфинитив в страдательном залоге (Infinitive Passive), который очень часто встречается в технических текстах. Сравните:

The engineer wants to help the workers. (Active) The engineer wants to be helped. (Passive) Инженер хочет помочь рабочим. Инженер хочет, чтобы ему помогли.

## Функции инфинитива

	<b>Тупкции инфиципи</b>	
Функция	Пример	Перевод
1. Подлежащее (обычно перед таким инфинитивом ставят it)	To lean out of the window is dangerous. (обычно: It is dangerous to lean out of the window.)	ожно (поезда) опасно.
2. Дополнение	We decided to wait for her.	Мы решили подождать ее.
3. Определение	Her wish to win was quite natural.	Ее желание выиграть было вполне естественным.
	Is there much work to do/ to be done today?	Сегодня много работы, которую нужно вы- полнить?
4. Обстоятельство цели или следствия	I went to London to learn English.	Я поехал в Лондон, чтобы изучить анг- лийский язык.
	He left home, never to be seen again.	Он оставил дом, и ни- кто не видел его снова.
5. Часть сложного до- полнения	I heard someone open the door. I'd like you to find him a job.	открыл дверь.
6. Часть сложного под- лежащего	She is known to have a fine collection of paint- ings.	-

## ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

- 1. Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:
- [1] 'mineral, 'different, 'difference, 'fissure, dis'tinctive
- [i:] 'region, need, seam, piece, re'lief, ga'lena
- [o] 'quality, 'quantity, 'copper, rock, crop
- [5:] call, ore, small, ex'plore, 'forecast
- [æ] ex'tract, sand, 'gravel, 'valuable, map, lo'cality
- [A] 'country, such, e'nough, 'lustre, 'lustrous, oc'currence [ei] stage, 'data, 'nature, grey, 'mainly, ex'plain, a'vailable
- [ou] float, stone, gold, ex'pose, 'opening
- 2. Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запоминть их.
  - aerial ['єәгіәl] а воздушный; надземный
  - certain ['sə:tn] а определенный; некоторый; certainly adv конеч-
  - cost [kost] (cost) v стоить; n цена; стоимость
  - crop [krop] v (out) обнажать(ся), выходить на поверхность (о пласте, породе); syn expose; засевать, собирать урожай
  - dredging ['dred3Iŋ] и выемка грунта; драгирование
  - **drill** [dril] v byputh, chepnuth; <math>nбурение, сверление; бурильный молоток: drilling n бурение, сверление; core-drilling колонковое (керновое) бурение
  - drive [draiv] (drove [drouv], driven ['drīvn]) v проходить (горизонтальную выработку); приводить в движение; управлять (машиной); п горизонтальная выработка; привод; передача
  - evidence ['evid(a)ns] n основание; признак(и); свидетельства
  - expect [iks'pekt] v ожидать; рассчитывать; думать; предлагать explore [iks'plo:] v разведывать месторождение полезного ископаемого с попутной добычей; exploratory a разведочный; exploration и детальная разведка; разведочные горные работы

- по месторождению
- galena [gə'li:nə] и галенит, свинцовый блеск
- indicate ['Indikelt] v указывать, показывать; служить признаком; означать
- lead [led] n свинец
- look for ['luk 'fo:] v искать
- open up ['oupn 'Ap] v вскрывать (месторождение); нарезать (новую лаву, забой); opening n горная выработка; подготовительная выработка; вскрытие месторождения
- panning ['pænīŋ] л промывка (золотоносного песка в лотке)
- processing ['prousesin] n ofpaforка; ~ industry обрабатывающая промышленность
- рготе [pru:v] v разведывать (xaрактер месторождения или залегания); доказывать; испытывать, пробовать; proved a разведанный, достоверный; ргоуing п опробование, предварительная разведка
- search [sə:tʃ] v исследовать; (for) искать (месторождение); п поиск; syn prospecting
- sign [sain] и знак, символ; признак, примета
- store [sto:] v хранить, накапливать (o sanacax)

work [wə:k] v работать; вынимать, извлекать (уголь, руду); вырабатывать; workable a подходящий для работы, пригодный для разработки, рабочий (*о пласте*); рентабельный; working *п* разработка, горная выработка

country rock коренная (основная) порода distinctive properties отличительные свойства maileable ['mæliəbl] metal ковкий металл

3. Определите, какой частью речи являются следующие слова. Переведите их:

explore		explorer	-	exploration
indicate		indicator	_	indication
prospect	_	prospector	_	prospecting
survey	_	surveyor		surveying
differ	_	different		difference
occur	-	occurrence		occurring
lustre		lustrous		
scientist	_	scientific	_	science
consider	_	considerable	_	consideration
investigate	_	investigator	_	investigation

#### 4. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов. Переведите их:

aerial survey
ground methods of prospecting
visible evidence of mineral deposits
search for valuable minerals
exploratory workings
mode of occurrence
a preliminary estimation of the deposit
lustrous coal
to touch upon a problem
to solve a problem

geological exploration
accurate data
exploration equipment
certain ore deposits
a particular type of ground
gold dredging
space research
to crop out at the surface
to cope with a problem
to deal with a problem

5. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с кориями соответствующих слов в русском языке. Переведите их:

the problems of searching for economically useful mineral deposits; visible evidence of mineralization; various distinctive physical properties of valuable minerals; topographical relief; geochemical methods of prospecting; areas of increased concentration of particular elements; the biological (hydrochemical, geobotanical) methods of prospecting; aerial magnetic and gamma surveys; geological interpretation of the data; the type of country rock; the process of mountain formation; aerial photography

 Прочитайте текст А. Скажите, что должно быть в центре винмания геолога при разведке новых месторождений.

#### **TEKCT A**

## **Prospecting**

Mining activities include prospecting and exploration for a mineral deposit through finding, proving, developing, extracting and processing the ore. That is why it is possible to divide the mining activity into three major phases: 1) before mining which involves prospecting and exploration required to locate, characterize and prove a potential ore body; 2) mining which refers to actual coal or ore extraction. Extraction processes include underground or surface mining and dredging; 3) after mining which involves processing and preparing the raw ore for the end product.

As has already been said, before a mineral deposit can be worked, that is, before it can be extracted from the Earth for use by man, it must first be found. The search for economically useful mineral deposits is called *prospecting*. To establish the quality and quantity of a mineral deposit, the type of country rock, etc. means to prove it and this process is called *proving*. Prospecting and proving are only two different stages of mining geological exploration, the latter includes drilling and driving of openings.

Last century prospectors looked for visible evidence of mineralization on the surface of the Earth. To recognize valuable minerals it was necessary to know their various distinctive physical properties. For example, gold occurs in nature as a heavy malleable yellow metal. Galena, the most important mineral containing lead, is dark grey, heavy and lustrous. The first ores of iron to be mined were deposits of magnetite, a black heavy mineral capable of attracting a piece of iron.

As the deposits of mineral that cropped out at the surface were mined, the search for additional supplies of minerals took place. The science of geology was used to explain the occurrence of ore deposits.

The aim of geological prospecting is to provide information on a preliminary estimation of the deposit and the costs of the geological investigations to be made. It also indicates whether it is available to continue the exploration or not.

Prospecting work includes three stages: 1) finding signs of the mineral; 2) finding the deposit; 3) exploring the deposit.

General indications of the possibility of exposing this or that mineral in a locality can be obtained by studying its general topographical relief, the type of ground and its general natural conditions. Thus, in mountainous regions where fissures were formed during the process of mountain formation, ore minerals could be expected in the fissure fillings. In hilly regions, sedimentary deposits would be expected.

Certain deposits are found only in a particular type of ground. Coal seams, for example, are found in sedimentary formations mainly consisting of sandstones and shales. Veins, on the other hand, are found in crystalline (igneous) rocks, and the type of country rock usually determines the type of minerals.

At present, prospecting methods to be used are as follows:

- 1. Surface geological and mineralogical prospecting such as panning.
- 2. Geophysical, geochemical, geobotanical prospecting.
- 3. Aerial photography with geological interpretation of the data to be obtained is highly effective from aircraft or helicopter. Besides, successful development of space research has made it possible to explore the Earth's resources from space by satellites.

In modern prospecting the methods mentioned above are used together with the study of geological maps.

#### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 7. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. The search for economically useful mineral deposits is called proving.
- 2. Last century prospectors looked for visible evidence of mineral deposits.
  - 3. The first ores of iron to be mined were deposits of galena.
- 4. The science of geology can explain the mode of occurrence of ore deposits.
  - 5. As a rule prospecting includes four stages.
- 6. The study of general topographical relief and the type of ground makes it possible to expose this or that deposit.
- 7. Geologists know that certain deposits are only found in a particular type of ground.
  - 8. As is known, veins are found in metamorphic rocks.
  - 8. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:
  - 1. What is prospecting?
  - 2. What is proving?
  - 3. How did prospectors find mineral deposits in the 19th century?
- 4. Does gold occur in nature as a heavy malleable yellow metal or as a heavy dark-grey one?

- 5. What metal is capable of attracting a piece of iron?
- 6. What does prospecting work provide?
- 7. What are the three main stages of prospecting?
- 8. Is it enough to know only the topographical relief of a locality for exposing this or that mineral?
  - 9. What methods of prospecting do you know?
- 10. What are the most effective aerial methods of prospecting now?

#### а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:

- 1. country rock
- 2. panning
- 3. the search for commercially useful deposits
- 4. geological exploration
- 5. to look for evidence of mineralization
- 6. distinctive properties
- 7. lustrous metal
- capable of attracting a piece of iron
- additional supplies of minerals
- 10. the occurrence of ore deposits

- а) залегание рудных месторождений
- б) блестящий метали
- в) коренная (основная) порода
- г) дополнительные запасы минералов
- д) промывка (золотоносного песка в лотке)
- е) геологическая разведка (с попутной добычей)
- ж) искать доказательства наличия месторождения
- з) отличительные свойства
- и) поиски экономически полезных месторождений
- к) способный притягивать кусок металла

#### б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов;

- стоимость геологических исследований
- выходить на поверхность (обнажаться)
- 3. произвести предварительную оценку (месторождения)
- 4. визуальные наблюдения с воздуха
- 5. полученные данные
- б. галенит, песчаники и сланцы
- 7. общие показания
- 8. находить признаки месторождения
- 9. определенные рудные месторождения

- a) the data obtained
- b) galena, sandstones and shales
- B) the cost of geological investigations
- r) to crop out
- д) certain ore deposits
- e) to make a preliminary estimation (of a deposit)
- ж) visual aerial observations
- 3) to find the signs of a deposit
- и) general indications

#### 10. Подберите из списка А и Б близкие по значению слова:

A

- 1. improve
- 2. supply
- 3. purpose
- 4. various
- 5. similar
- 6. manufacture

Б

- a) alike
- б) seam
- B) get, receive
- r) of course
- л) look for
- e) aim

- 7. obtain
- 8. search
- 9. bed
- 10. size
- 11. certainly

- ж) make better
- 3) produce
- и) different
- k) provide
- л) dimension
- 11. Определите, какой частью речи являются выделенные слова. Переведите предложения:
- 1. The search for primary gold deposits can be made by metallometric methods of prospecting.
- 2. The main aim of geological prospecting is to search for economically useful deposits.
- 3. Geologists study geological prospecting maps drawn up on the basis of the preliminary search and forecast of the possible occurrence of new deposits.
- 4. The *study* of the character of a locality in the area of search will help determine prospecting methods to be used.
- 5. Prospecting work provides information on the *cost* of the geological investigations. It indicates how much these investigations *cost* and whether it is advisable to continue the exploration.
  - 6. Geologists use geophysical methods.
- 7. As is known, the use of certain bacteria helps search for oil and gas.
  - 12. Занолните пропуски в предложениях, используя приведенные слова:

## explore exploratory exploration exploring

- a)1. ... deals with a complex range of geological, mining and economic problems. Its main task is to determine the quality, shape and mode of occurrence of mineral deposits and their main properties.
- 2. Exploration includes drilling and driving of ... openings. These ... openings can supply the most accurate information on the mineral exposed by them.
- 3. While ... a deposit the geologists establish its general size, determine shape, dimensions and quality.
  - 4. The geological party was sent to ... a new deposit.

## survey (surveying) surveyor(s) surveyed

- 6)1. In recent years combined geophysical ... by air has been used on a wide scale.
- 2. In modern ... automation is being used in recording the field measurements.

- 3. Now the ... need only to set up the instrument in the field and it will do all recordings automatically.
  - 4. Laser is being used by mine ... now.
  - 5. Underground working can be ... by modern methods.

#### store stored storing

- B) Earth is not entirely without energy resources of its own. There is a large amount of heat energy ... in its molten interior. There is also both kinetic and potential energy ... in the Earth-Moon-Sun system. In addition, a relatively small amount of solar energy has been ... in the carbon atoms of the fossil fuels (coal, oil and natural gas). A potentially much larger energy reserve is ... in the nuclei of the very light and the very heavy elements. Wind, ocean currents and the evaporation of water only temporarily ... energy. It is known that there are different methods of ... energy. ... tidal energy has not provided much to the total energy supply yet.
  - 13. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на инфинитив

#### а) в функции определения:

- 1. The geological investigations to be carried out include field prospecting and exploration.
- 2. The geological and physical conditions of the seam to be worked include its thickness, depth, hardness, etc.
- 3. The possibility of making direct observations in workings depends on the mining system to be applied.
- 4. The work of geologists at mines has its own specific character and its own range of problems to be solved during the exploitation of the deposit.
- 5. The main points to be observed during the driving of openings are the mode of occurrence of the mineral body, country rocks exposed by the openings, the type of fissuring and folding, etc.

## б) в функции обстоятельства цели:

- 1. To estimate a nickel ore the geologists must know how the nickel is distributed.
- 2. Geochemical methods are applied at different stages of geological investigations, and are used to establish the general mineralization of rocks.
- 3. To explore certain types of deposits geophysical methods have long been used. In coal basins these methods are used chiefly to study folded and faulted structures.

15. Переведите предложения, используя следующие слова и сочетании слов: prospecting from aircraft and helicopters; the choice of the method; both ... and; the search for new mineral deposits; ground and aerial methods of prospecting; to be recognized easily; to depend on the type of the deposit; to be widely used: natural conditions; to cros out

- 1. Одной из главных задач геологической разведки является поиск новых месторождений полезных ископаемых.
- 2. В настоящее время используются как наземные методы (геологической) разведки, так и разведка с воздуха.
- 3. Выбор метода разработки зависит от типа месторождения, которое будет разрабатываться. Он зависит также от природных условий.
- 4. Так как месторождение выходит на поверхность, оно было легко обнаружено геологами.
- 5. Сейчас широко применяется разведка с самолета или вертолета.
- 16. Выразите несогласие и подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста А. Используйте предлагаемые разговорные формулы:

it seems to be wrong; on the contrary; to my mind; in my opinion; as far as I know; as is known; I'd like to say that

- 1. Prospecting and proving (exploration) do not differ at all.
- 2. The knowledge of the type of ground of the prospecting area is quite enough to find this or that mineral deposit.
- 3. Coal seams are always found in crystalline (igneous) rocks while veins occur in sedimentary formations.
- 4. At present great consideration is given to surface (ground) and mineralogical methods of prospecting.
- 17. Сумынруйте содержание текста А, используя активную лексику текста.
- Продолжите диалог. Используйте активную лексику урока, а также разговорные формулы.
  - A.: What method of prospecting do you think to be the most effective?
  - B.: I suppose ... because ... but I think not only this method ...
  - A.: I agree with you, but it is necessary to say that ...
  - B.: I see. And what's your opinion on ...
  - A.: .....
  - B.: .....

6

#### **ГРАММАТИКА**

## Инфинитивные обороты

Инфинитивный оборот «сложное подлежащее» представляет собой следующую конструкцию:

На русский язык этот инфинитивный оборот переводится сложноподчиненным предложением. Сказуемое английского предложения (is said, is known и др.) переводится неопределенно-личным глаголом во мн. ч. говорят, сообщают и т.д., за которым следует придаточное дополнительное предложение с союзом что, причем инфинитив становится сказуемым этого придаточного предложения.

«Сложным подлежащим» называют также сочетание глаголов to seem/to appear казаться, to prove оказываться, to happen оказываться и прилагательных likely вероятный, unlikely маловероятный, sure вероятный с инфинитивом:

He is considered to be one of the best specialists in this field.

He is thought to have been killed in an air crash.

The method appears to be effective.

Он считается (Его считают) одним из лучших специалистов в этой области.

Считают, что он погиб в авиационной катастрофе.

*По-видимому*, этот метод эффективен.

**Инфинитивный оборот «сложное дополнение»** представляет собой следующую конструкцию:

Существительное		инфинитив
(в общем падеже) или		смыслового
местонмение	+	глагола
(в объектном падеже)		(с частицей <b>to</b>
в функции дополнения		или без нее)

Specialists consider open-cast mining to be promising.

Специалисты считают, что открытый способ разработки является перспективным.

На русский язык инфинитивный оборот «сложное дополцение» часто переводится дополнительным придаточным предложением, вводимым словами что, как, чтобы.

Инфинитив смыслового глагола употребляется с частицей to после глаголов want/would like xomemь, know знать, think/believe/consider полагать, считать, expect ожидать:

She didn't want me to leave her.

I thought him to be my best friend.

Она не хотела, *чтобы* я уходил от нее. Я считал его своим лучшим

другом (*что* он мой лучший друг).

После глаголов, обозначающих чувства и восприятие, и некоторых других инфинитив употребляется без to (feel чувствовать, hear слышать, see видеть, watch наблюдать, notice замечать, make заставлять и др.):

I didn't see him come in. They felt the earth move. Я не видел(а), как он вошел. Они почувствовали, что почва колеблется (у них под ногами).

They made us pay for the dinner. (Ho: We were made to pay for the dinner.) Они заставили нас заплатить за обел.

## ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

## 19. Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [1] dip, pit, sink, give, build, thick
- [i:] each, seam, need, steep, 'feature
- [e] length, trench, 'gentle, 'level, 'section
- [A] 'current, 'country, e'nough, 'other, re'sult
- [o] cost, plot, a'long, 'crosscut
- [a:] task, 'sample, 'sampling, part
- [a:] search, 'survey, 'surface, 'purpose

[at] - strike, find, type, line, 'neither

[et] — aid, vein, 'neighbour, de'tail, shape, case

[ou] - slope, close, low, both

 Прочитайте следующие слова в сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух в постарайтесь запомнить их.

adk ['ædit] n горизонтальная подземная выработка, штольня angle ['ængi] n угол

approximate [ə'proksimit] а прибинэнтельный

bit [bit] п режущий инструмент; буровая коронка, коронка для алмазного бурения; головка бура, сверло; carbide bit армироважная коронка, армированный бур; diamond bit алмазная буровая коронка

borehole ['bo:houl] *п* скважина, буровая скважина

crosscut ['kroskat] n knepmnar

**«Вр** [dip] и падение (залежи); уклон, откос; и падать

eaable [I'neibl] v давать возможность или право (что-л. сделать) exploit [iks'ploit] v разрабатывать

(месторожение); эксплуатировать; exploitation п разработка; эксплуатация

**меанте** ['mega] *п* мера; мерка; критерий; степень; *pl* свита, пласты; у измерять

overturden (.ouvə'bə:dən) л покрывающие породы, перекрывающие породы; верхние отложения, наносы; вскрыша

pit [pit] и шахта; карьер, разрез; шурф

reliable [rī'laɪəbi] а надежный; достоверный

rig [119] и буровой станок, буровая

вышка; буровая каретка; буровое оборудование

sample ['so:mpl] n образец; проба, v отбирать образцы; опробовать, испытывать

section ['sekfn] п участок, секция, отделение, отрезок, разрез, профиль, поперечное сечение; geological ~ геологический разрез (пород)

**sequence** ['si:kwəns] *п* последовательность; порядок следования;

ряд

sink [sink] (sank [sænk], sunk [sʌnk])

v проходить (шахтный ствол,
вертикальную выработку); углублять; погружать; опускать; sinking ['sinkin] п проходка (вертикальных или наклонных выработок); shaft sinking проходка
ствола

slope [sloup] п наклон; склон; бремсберг; уклон; и клониться, иметь наклон; sloping а наклонный; gently sloping с небольшим наклоном

steep (sti:p) а кругой, кругопадаюший, наклонный

strike [straik] n эд. простирание; v простираться; across the strike вкрест простирания; along (on) the strike по простиранию

trench {trentif и траншея, канава; котлован; и копать, рыть, шурфовать

to make use (of) использовать, применять to take into consideration принимать во внимание; syn take into account

21. a) Образуйте от следующих прилагательных паречия с суффиксом -ly и переведите их:

accurate, chief, different, easy, exact, geological, main, particular, practical, proper, slight

б) Определите по словообразовательным элементам (суффиксам и префиксам), какой частью речи являются следующие слова. Переведите их;

known — unknown; differ — different — difference; found founder — foundation; mean — meaning — means; difficult difficulty; extract — extractive — extraction; improve improvement

#### 22. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов. Переведите их:

preliminary exploration
shape, dimensions and
quality of a deposit
properties of the surrounding
rock and overburden
analyses and tests of samples
core drilling
drilling rigs
to measure bed thickness
to facilitate the planning
of current production
to make use of exploratory
openings

general size of a deposit
exact estimation of ore
reserves
exploratory pits, crosscut and
boreholes
reliable information on the
angle of dip
to determine the industrial
importance of a deposit
to take into consideration
detailed estimates of the
ore reserves of individual
sections

23. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корией с кориями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

the whole complex of investigations; industrial importance of a deposit; natural and economic conditions of the deposit; three stages of exploration; geological map of the deposit; detailed survey; information on the preliminary exploration; methods of exploration to be chosen in any particular case; surface relief; shape of the mineral deposit; vertical pits and crosscuts; special features in the search for veins; on the basis of analyses and tests of samples; reliable information on mineral reserves; different sectors of the deposit; exploitation exploration; mining operations; planning of current production and calculating the balance of reserves and ore mined

24. Прочитайте текст Б. Скажите, в чем различие между предварительной и детальной геологической разведкой (с попутной добычей) месторождения.

#### ТЕКСТ Б

## **Exploration of Mineral Deposits**

Exploration is known to include a whole complex of investigations carried out for determining the industrial importance of a deposit. The main task is to determine the quality and quantity of mmeral and the natural and economic conditions in which it occurs. The exploration of the deposit is divided into three stages, namely preliminary exploration, detailed exploration and exploitation exploration.

The aim of preliminary exploration is to establish the general size of a deposit and to obtain an approximate idea of its shape, dimensions and quality. At this stage the geological map of the deposit is corrected and a detailed survey of its surface is completed.

The information on the preliminary exploration is expected to give an all-round description of the deposit which will enable the cost of its detailed exploration to be estimated.

The following points should be taken into consideration: 1) the shape and area of the deposit; 2) its depth and angles of dip and strike; 3) its thickness; 4) the properties of the surrounding rock and overburden; 5) the degree of uniformity of distribution of the mineral within the deposit and the country rock, etc.

Preliminary explorations can make use of exploratory openings such as trenches, prospecting pits, adits, crosscuts and boreholes. They are planned according to a definite system, and some are driven to a great depth.

All the exploratory workings are plotted on the plan. These data allow the geologist to establish the vertical section of the deposit.

The quality of the mineral deposit is determined on the basis of analyses and tests of samples taken from exploratory workings.

The method of exploration to be chosen in any particular case depends on the thickness of overburden, the angle of dip, the surface relief, the ground water conditions and the shape of the mineral deposit.

The task of the detailed exploration is to obtain reliable information on the mineral reserves, their grades and distribution in the different sectors of the deposit. Detailed exploration data provide a much more exact estimate of the mineral reserves.

Mine or exploitation exploration is known to begin as soon as mining operations start. It provides data for detailed estimates of the ore reserves of individual sections. It facilitates the planning of current production and calculating the balance of reserves and ore mined.

The searching and discovering of new mineralized areas are based on geological survey and regional geophysical prospecting. The results of these investigations provide data on iron-bearing formations and new deposits for commercial extraction.

In detailed exploration both underground workings and borehole survey are used. Core drilling with diamond and carbide bits is widely used. Non-core drilling is also used in loose rocks in combination with borehole geophysical survey.

One of the main methods to explore coal deposits is also corredrilling. Modern drilling equipment makes it possible to accurately measure bed thickness and determine structure of beds, faults and folds. Recording control instruments are attached to drilling rigs which allow the geologists to get reliable samples good for nearly all parameters of coal quality to be determined.

#### УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

- 25. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста Б.
- 1. The purpose of preliminary exploration is to determine the mineral reserves and their distribution in the different sectors of the deposit.
- 2. The properties of the surrounding rock and overburden should be taken into consideration during the preliminary exploration.
- 3. The purpose of the detailed exploration is to find out the quantity (reserves) of the deposit.
- 4. Exploitation exploration facilitates the planning of current production.
  - 5. Both core drilling and non-core drilling are widely used.
- 6. Recording control instruments allow geologists to get reliable ore samples.

## 26. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What stages does exploration include?
- 2. What is the main purpose of preliminary exploration?
- 3. What should be taken into consideration by geologists during preliminary exploration?
  - 4. What exploratory openings do you know?
- 5. Do you know how the quality of the mineral deposit is determined?
  - 6. What is the aim of a detailed exploration?
  - 7. Is core drilling used in prospecting for loose rocks?
  - 8. What is drilling equipment used for?

## а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих сочетаний слов:

- 1 bedded deposits
- 2 core drilling
- I the angle of dip of the seam
- 4 the thickness of overburden
- 5 exploratory workings
- 6, composition of minerals
- 7; pits and crosscuts
- 8. to exploit new oil deposits
- 9 sampling
- 10 geological section

- а) мощность наносов
- б) разрабатывать новые месторождения нефти
- в) шурфы и квершлаги
- г) пластовые месторождения
- д) опробование (отбор) образцов
- е) угол падения пласта
- ж) колонковое бурение
- з) геологический разрез (пород)
- и) состав минералов
- к) разведочные выработки

#### б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эканваленты следующих сочетаний слов:

- 1. буровые скважины
- 2. по простиранию пласта
- 3. равномерность распределения минерала в залежи
- 4. водоносность пород
- 5. карбидные и алмазные коронки
- 6. детальная разведка
- 7. использовать новые поисковые метолы
- 8. проникать в залежь
- 9. коренная порода
- 10 свойства окружающих пород

- a) ground water conditions
- 6) detailed exploration
- B) boreholes
- r) along the strike of the bed (seam)
- д) carbide and diamond bits
- e) the uniformity of mineral distribution in the deposit
- ж) the properties of surrounding rocks
- to make use of new prospecting methods
- и) country rock
- κ) to penetrate into the deposit

#### 28. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, используя приведенные слова:

#### bed

#### bedded

## bedding

- a)1. Exploration of gently dipping ... deposits is performed by vertical pits.
- 2. The principal indicator of the economic importance of combustible shales is the persistence (постоянство) of the ...s in thickness and grade.
- 3. As is known, any change in the normal ... of a seam is called a disturbance.

#### work

#### workable

## working

- 6)1. The term "prospecting" covers the whole range of geological aimed at discovering ... deposits.
- 2. Naturally, the prospector also finds non-... mineral concentrations more often than economic ones.
- 3. Many countries have their own classification system of ... deposits.

- 4. The type of exploratory ...s needed depends on the thickness of overburden and the angle of dip.
- 5. The thickness of the seam considerably influences the choice of the method of ... .
  - 29. Определите значение сочетаний глаголов с послелогами:

to look at the geological map to work out a new plan (programme) to find out all about the mode of occurrence of a

mineral

to carry out research

to look for a mineral deposit to work on a difficult problem

to be made up of partings

to crop out at the surface

to search for ores

to touch upon the methods of prospecting

### 30. Подберите и глаголам из списка А существительные из списка Б. Переведите полученные сочетания слов на русский язык:

A.

- 1. to discover
- 2. to drive
- 3. to extract
- 4. to estimate
- 5. to choose
- 6. to determine
- 7. to sink
- 8. to search (for)
- 9. to take
- 10. to smelt
- 11. to drill

- a) oil and gas
- 6) valuable minerals
- B) a proper method
- r) new coal-fields
- д) crosscut (adit, drift)
- e) the cost of the project
- x) holes
- 3) lead and copper
- и) reserves
- k) samples
- л) iron ore
- M) pits
- 31. Назовите иомера предложений, в которых местоимение и 1) является формальным подлежащим, 2) заменяет ранее упомянутое существительное:
- 1. Coal is used as a fuel. It is also important as the source of coke for the steel industry.
- 2. It is possible to explore very gently sloping seams by boreholes.
- 3. It is due to Karpinsky's work that we know the origin of the coal in the Donets Basin.
- 4. It should be noted that there exist surface (ground) and aerial prospecting methods.
- 5. Oil occurred at great depths and it was difficult to search for it.
  - 32. Переведите предложения, обращая внамание на перевод союзов either or, neither ... nor:

either	тот или другой, и тот и другой	either or	либо либо, или или
neither	ни тот, ни другой, ни один (из них)	neither nor	ни ни

- 1. Depending on the geological conditions either adits or boreholes can be driven into the deposit.
- 2. When working steep seams under thick overburden neither trenches nor adits can be used.
- 3. Neither the thickness of overburden nor the angles of dip and strike were determined correctly.
- 4. At present either surface or aerial methods of geological prospecting can be used.
  - 5. Neither faults nor fissures were found by the surveyors.
- 33. Переведите предложення, обращая внямание на перевод инфинитивного оборота «сложное подлежащее»:
  - 1. Oil is known to be one of the most important sources of energy.
- 2. Petroleum is believed to have been formed from decaying vegetable and animal remains.
- 3. Drilling is considered to be the principal exploration method and it is widely used when deposits are of large dimensions.
- 4. Until recently a depth of 50-ft overburden was considered to be the maximum.
- 5. Coal is still the most important fuel and is likely to remain the main source of energy for years to come.
  - 6. Neighbouring coal beds seemed to be sloping gently.
- 7. The computerized systems of planning and control proved to be reliable.
- 34. Выявините из текста Б предложения, в которых употребляются инфинитивные обороты «сложное подлежащее», «сложное дополнение». Переведите их.
- 35. Выразите несогласне и подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста Б. Используйте предлагаемые разговоряме формулы:
- on the contrary; to my mind; in my opinion; as far as I know; I'd like to stress; it should be taken into consideration
- 1. The preliminary exploration gives reliable information only on the place of the deposit.
- 2. The quality of the mineral deposit can be determined without taking samples.

- 3. The data obtained from the exploratory workings allow the geologist to estimate the mineral reserves and to plan current production.
  - 4. In prospecting for loose rocks, only core-drilling is used.
  - 36. Суммируйте содержание текста Б по плану.
  - 1. The task of the preliminary exploration.
  - 2. Exploratory workings used at the preliminary stage of exploration.
- 3. Sampling as a means of determining the quality of the mineral deposit.
  - 4. The aims of the detailed proving and exploitation exploration.
- 37. Скажите, какие основные сведения необходимы геологу для описания месторождения.
- 38. Расскажите о вкладе выдающихся ученых-геологов в науку о Земле и ее недрах.

#### B

39. Прочитайте текст В. Перечислите основные методы разведки, упомянутые в тексте, и скажите, какой из них вы считаете наиболее прогрессивным. Дайте обоснование своего ответа.

#### **TEKCT B**

- 1. World-wide economic development has been characterized by the growth rates in the demand of raw materials and especially for the primary sources of energy. Despite the development of nuclear energy, the expansion of off-shore oil and natural gas production, the extraction of oil from bituminous sands and oil shales, the liquefaction (разжижение) and gasification of coal, and the application of such sources as geothermal and solar energy, the burden (бремя) of energy supply will continue to fall on the producers of fossil fuels for many years to come. This applies particularly to the production of solid fuels.
- 2. As is known, most minerals are mined from surface deposits now. Even though the mining industry continues the search for low-grade surface deposits, it is increasingly necessary that the economic subsurface deposits should be mined. This fact leads to the development of new methods of prospecting.
- 3. New techniques have been developed for rapid mapping and geochemical sampling from light aircraft while in flight. Statistical studies of regional geochemical sampling aided (помогать) by computers are being widely adopted. In general, computers play an

important role in the quick interpretation of geological problems. Colour photography is also being used as an aid in certain geological work and mining studies.

- 4. A method of prospecting for mineral, gas, oil, etc. which is based on a combination of X-rays and ultrasonic transmissions came into use recently. The method is fully portable and of great value in drilling. In addition, this method determines the areas of interest during drilling and gives close grade control during mining operations.
- 5. At present, the scientists are conducting intensive research aimed at using geocosmic rays as a means of determining the size of an ore deposit in the prospecting stage. As is known, until recently scientists dealt only with the interplanetary functions of cosmic rays. Cosmic rays coming in from the depths of the Universe are expected to explore near-earth and interplanetary space.
- 6. The geocosmic method is based on the fact that when the cosmic rays get into the atmosphere, the so-called secondary cosmic rays, muons, appear. These particles are capable of penetrating rather deep into the Earth's crust. The greatest muon penetration depth registered today is stated to be about three thousand metres. This fact has suggested the idea of using the rays in mineral prospecting.
- 7. Besides, successful development of space research has made it possible to survey the Earth's resources from space by satellites. The advantages of the surveys of the Earth's resources by satellites are such that vast areas such as entire mountain belts and continents can be mapped synoptically. The greatest potential of surveying the Earth's resources from space for mineral exploration is based on the ability to map synoptically the geomorphology and general geological environment (окружающая среда) of very large areas. The results obtained provide more accurate and complete information than is available from conventional (обычный) surveys.

# УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

- 40. а) В каждом абзаце текста В найдите предложение, передающее его основную мысль.
  - б) Озаглавьте каждый абзац текста В.
- 41. Найдите в тексте В предложения, точно отвечающие на следующие вопросы:
- 1. What type of fuel will continue to be the primary source of energy?
  - 2. What deposits should be mined in the future?

- 3. What is the method of prospecting based on X-rays and ultrasonic transmissions used for?
- 4. What fact has suggested the idea of using the cosmic rays in mineral prospecting?
- 5. What is the surveying of the Earth's resources from space based on?
- 42. Найдите в тексте В и выпищите английские эканваленты следую-щих слов и выражений:

растущие темпы, сырье, снабжение энергией, особенно (1); низкосортный, необходимо (2); новые методы (приемы), быстрая съемка (картирование) (3); портативный, кроме того, тщательный контроль за качеством (4); до недавнего времени, из глубин вселенной (5); так называемый, способный проникать (6); способность наносить на карту (картировать) (7)

- 43. Определяте, который из трех заголовков наиболее соответствует содержанию текста В:
  - 1. Methods of Mineral Prospecting.
  - 2. New Techniques Applied in Mineral Prospecting.
  - 3. Recent Developments in Mineral Prospecting.
- 44. Расскажите, что нового вы узнали из текста В. Какие факты вам были уже известны?

# KPOCCBOPД (CROSSWORD)

$\pi \times$	_								
MΩ	ľ	N	T	П	S	M	F	Р	П
R	0	C	K	S	ш	R	Ε	Ε	Μ
₹E	U	E	V		D	E	Z	O	Ш
A	S	Ξ	_	>	ш	2	T	F	۵
1 1	C	K	Z	ш	S	S	Α	Α	
M	Ε	7	S	-	0	Z	2	5	Α
H	Α	R	C	0	A		>	Ε	T
Α	C	C	IJ	M	J	L	Α	T	Ε
	D D D B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B B	D I G N B E O R O A S A S A S A S A S A S A S A S A S A	D I M D G A D B E L D R O C R E U E P A S H H I C K I M E N C H A R	D I M E D G A S D B E L T D R O C K R E U E V A S H I H I C K N S C H A R C	D I M E N D G A S T A U N B U R M B E L T U D R O C K S R E U E V I P A S H I V H I C K N E I M E N S I C H A R C O	D I M E N T D G A S T O A U N B U R N M B E L T U E D R O C K S E R E U E V I D D A S H I V E H I C K N E S I M E N S I O C H A R C O A	D I M E N I A I D G A S I O I A U N B U R N I M B E L I U E E O R O C K S E R R E U E V I D E P A S H I V E R H I C K N E S S I M E N S I O N C H A R C O A L	D I M E N T A R D G A S T O T A U N B U R N T G M B E L T U E E M D R O C K S E R E R E U E V I D E N A S H I V E R T H I C K N E S S A I M E N S I O N R C H A R C O A L Y	MOUNTISMFP DIMENTARY DGASTOTAR UNBURNTGI MBELTUEEMT DROCKSEREE REUEVIDENC ASHIVERTF HICKNESSAA MENSIONRU CHARCOALYE ACCUMULAT

В этом квадрате зашифрованы геологические термины и просто английские слова. Сколько слов удастся найти вам? Запишите их и дайте их русские эквиваленты.

# ИНТЕРВЬЮ с профессором Дж. Мортоном

Прочитайте интервью по ролям. Суммируйте его содержание своими словами (6-8 предложений).

TEACHER: Dear friends! Let me introduce Professor John

Morton from Newcastle University. Professor Morton has kindly agreed to answer your questions about training geologists in Great Britain and about

geology as a science.

QUESTION: Will you kindly say a few words about the impor-

tance of geology as a science? Thank you.

ANSWER: Yes, of course. First of all, geology is a practical

science. It studies the Earth, its structure, composition and its evolution. It is a science in which the study of presentday processes plays a key role in understanding the evolutionary history of the Earth. At the same time the geological past helps understand modern processes and predict future trends. This is of increasing importance as we become more aware of environ-

mental problems.

QUESTION: You have mentioned environment. Does it concern

geology too?

ANSWER: Certainly. Environmental geology focuses on geology as

it relates to human activity, environmental hazards and changes resulting from natural geological processes.

QUESTION: What do you think about the role of mining geol-

ogy in the modern world?

ANSWER: I'll try to be short. Mining geology plays an essential role in two major fields. First, there is the engineering

task of extracting the valuable content of a mineral deposit (the ore) economically, efficiently and safely and with minimum disturbance to the environment. Second, since every ore deposit has a limited life, the future of the industry depends on prospecting and exploration to discover and evaluate new deposits, to replace dying mines and to meet increasing demands.

QUESTION: How long do students study geology in Great Britain?

ANSWER: I think, it depends on the university but mostly the course lasts 3 years, full-time, or 4 years if combined with a language subject (part time study is also possible).

As a rule, each academic year is divided into two semesters (terms). Assessment takes place at the end of each semester in the form of examinations and coursework. Traditionally, field studies have been one of the main problems of geology courses. The first-year programme provides basic geology, basic surveying, mathematics, statistics, observational and computing skills.

QUESTION: I'd like to know how the study process is organized in British universities. Thank you.

ANSWER: Well, formal teaching is by way of lectures, laboratory practicals, field excursions, personal studies.

All the students have a personal tutor who advises on progress through the course, choice of modules and other matters.

QUESTION: I've heard about the modular system. Can you tell us what it is like?

ANSWER: I'll try. At British universities, students' course is designed on a modular basis. Modules are self-contained units of study, which are taught and assessed independently of each other. When a student passes a module, he (she) gains a credit. At the end of the term, the numbers of credits he (she) gains, determines the award you receive. Each module is continuously assessed by coursework and/or end-of-term examination.

QUESTION: I wonder if you pay much attention to computing.

ANSWER: Well, British Universities have Computing Centres which offer a service based on a number of workstations and microcomputers. Access to computers is taken for granted by today's students.

QUESTION: My question concerns the languages, I mean foreign languages. Are geology students offered courses in foreign languages?

ANSWER: They are. Geology is usually taken in combination with one of the following: Classical Studies, German, French, Latin or Russian, etc. Besides, there are special language laboratories which are available for open access use by students. All international students who wish to attain greater fluency in English are offered the courses which provide for the systematic

development of the linguistic skills of students. Television programmes, either by direct transmission or by video recorder, can be used for formal classes or for private study in French, German, Russian, Latin, English as a foreign language, Spanish, Japanese as well as other languages.

QUESTION: Can you tell us a few words about students' life at British Universities?

ANSWER: Well you have no

Well, you have probably heard of Students' Unions looking after students' health and welfare. The university health service provides medical care for all the members of the university. The Students' Union is fully responsible for its members' needs which are controlled and run exclusively by students. I want to tell you one thing which can interest you. If you are a home student you may be entitled to apply for a Student Loan from the Student Loan Company. The loan may be taken out annually over the period of study and you will be expected to begin repayment on completion of the course provided you have obtained employment.

QUESTION: You've mentioned employment. In what areas can

the graduates find a job?

ANSWER: Mainly in areas such as exploration, oil field ser-

vices, geological mapping and mining, engineering geology and geotechnical engineering, environmen-

tal geology and hydrology and others.

QUESTION: What about sports and leisure?

ANSWER: I must say that most British Universities are famous for their football teams and rugby and cricket unions. There are Water Sports Centres with international rowing and canoeing facilities. Good facilities are provided for indoor and outdoor sports

(hockey, cricket, table tennis, dance, aerobics, keep-fit, volleyball, basketball, etc.).

TEACHER: Thank you so much, Professor Morton. It looks like our time is up.

PROFESSOR It was a pleasure to meet you all. I wish you success MORTON: in your study of geology.

Выразите свое мисние по поводу обсуждаемой проблемы.

# UNIT 8 Mining Methods

А. Грамматика

Условные предложения.

Texcm A.

General Information on Mining.

Б. Грамматика

1. Многофункциональность глаголов to be и to have.

2. Отрицательные предложения.

Текст Б.

Methods of Working Bedded Deposits Underground.

B. Texcm B. Mining Thick Seams.

Дискуссия о проблемах горнодобывающей промышленности.

### A

#### **ГРАММАТИКА**

# Условные предложения

Придаточные предложения условия присоединяются к главному предложению при помощи союзов: if если, provided that при условии, что..., in case (that) в случае если, unless если не, on condition that при условии, что... и др. Придаточное предложение может предшествовать главному или следовать за ним.

### Типы условных предложений

Три типа условных	Примеры и перевод			
предложений	Придаточное предложение	Главное предложение		
	2. If the weather is cold tomorrow, Если завтра будет хо-	я з <i>акрою</i> окно. we' <b>il stay</b> at home.		

Продолжение таблицы

II. Предложения нере- 4. If I had a summer I would/'d snend cottage. holidays in the country. ального условия, относящиеся к настоящему Если бы v меня была я бы проволил отпуск или будущему. В придапача (у меня ее нет!). в деревне. точном предложении 5. If I was/were rich. I'd buy a new car. употребляется прошед-Если бы я разбогател. я купил бы новую машее время (выражающее шину. нереальность действия If conditions permitted. the geologists could или сомнение), в глав-(might. would) anniv HOM - would + unduaerial prospecting. might. нитив (Takwe Если бы условия погеологи проведи ħы could) зволили. развелку с возлуха. 7. If you had spoken he wouldn't have been III. Предложения нереpolitely. anery. ального условия, относя-Если бы ты говорил(а) он бы не рассердился. шиеся к прошедшему вревежливо. мени. Описывают лейст-(Но ты говорил(а) невия или ситуации. вежливо, и он рассерименине места. **Υπο**лился!) требление временных форм: Past Perfect B 8. If conditions had nerthe geologists would have прилаточном предложеmitted. applied aerial prospecting. нин, would + перфект-Если бы условия погеологи применили бы ный инфинитив в зволили (вчера и т.п.), развелку с возлуха. главном. (Но этого не случилось, так как условия не позволили.)

# ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

# 1. Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [5:] broad, 'broadly, sought, floor, to ward, call
- [o] 'quarry, 'problem, eco'nomical, cross-'section, 'crosscut
- [i:] be neath, speaking, peat, in crease, im mediate
- [1] pit, 'mineral, 'building, 'distance, 'driven
- [A] pro'duction, pro'ductive, oc'currence, re'covery, 'govern, a'bove, 'function
- [æ] mass, 'tabular, 'barren, gas, 'shallow
- [ai] blind, type, 'widespread, des' cribe
- [ou] 'process, coal, mode, slope, 'sloping
- [ea] com'pare, pre'pare, 'vary, 'various
- Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запоминть их.

access ['ækses] n доступ
affect [ə'fekt] v воздействовать (на
что-л.); влиять; зуп influence

barren ['bærən] а, непродуктивный; пустой (о породе) chute [fu:t] п скат, спуск; углеспускная выработка; жёлоб

compare [kəm psə] v (with) сравнивать, проводить параллель

contribute [kən'tribju:t] v способствовать, содействовать; делать вклад (в науку); make s (one's) ~ to smth сделять вклад во что-л.

eross-section [.krэs'sekj(ə)n] n поперечное сечение, поперечный разрез. профиль

develop [di'veləp] v разрабатывать (месторождение); развивать (добычу); производить подготовительные работы; development n подготовительные работы; развитие добычи; развитие

drift [drift] *п* штрек, горизонтальная выработка

ensure [in'fuə] v обеспечивать, гарантировать; syn guarautee face [feis] n забой; лава

floor [flo:] и почва горной выработки, почва пласта (жилы); quarry ~ подошва карьера; пол, настил

govera ['gʌv(ə)n] v править, управлять; руководить; определять, обусловливать

inclination [.Inkli'netf(ə)n] п уклон, скат, наклон (пластов); наклонение; seam ~ падение (пласта); наклон (пласта)

incline [In'klain] п уклон, бремсберг, скат; наклонный ствол; gravity ~ бремсберг

inclined [In'klaind] а наклюнный; faily ~ слабо наклюнный; gently ~

наклонного паденыя; medium ~ умеренно наклонный (o nnacmax); steeply ~ крутопадающий level ['levi] n этаж, гогризонт; гори-

[vel ['levl] и этаж, гогризонт; горизонтальная горная выработка; штольня; уровенть (инструмент); нивелир; затерпас; горизонтальная пове:рхность

recover [п'kavə] v м.залекать (целики); выбирать, «очищать; добывать (уголь и мл.л.); восстанавливать

remove [n'mu:v] v удалять; убирать; устранять; перемещать; removal n вскрымия; выемка; уборка (породы); нзвлечение (крепи); перемещение; overburden ~ удаление вскрыши

гів [гів] п ребро; выступ; узкий целик, предохрани-ительный целик; грудь забоя

roof [пи:f] п крыша; кровля выработки; кровля пласта (или жилы); перекрытие; ~ support крепление кровли

shaft [fc:ft] и шахтный ствол; аихillary [э:g'ziljэп] ~ вспомогательный ствол; hoistin.g ~ подъемный ствол; главн:ый шахтный ствол

tabelar ['tæbjulə] а пластовый (о месторождении); пластообразный; плоский; ли-гэообразный; syn bedded, layered

waste [weist] n пустаят порода; отходы; syn barren ræck

well [wel] п буровая сакважина; колодец, источник; вюдоем; зумф

capital investment капитальные вложения
gate road промежуточный штрек
in bulk навалом, в виде крупных кусков
metal-bearing содержащий металл
production face/working очистной забой
productive mining эксплуатационные работы
in view of ввиду чего-л., принимая во вниманые что-л.
with a view to с целью

 Определите по словообразовательным элементам (суффиксам и префиксам), какой частью речи являются следующие слова. Перезведите их:

research - researcher - researching

consider — consideration — considerable

observe - observation

require - requirement

fame - famous

ferrous - non-ferrous

incline - inclined - inclination

#### 4. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

weak moof bad roof mof control roof fall the floor of a working hard floor barren sand test wells gas wells slope conveyer gently sloping deposit

dust removal

metallic substance

direct access to the deposit oil shale

ensuring access to the deposit

from the surface

loose roof roof conditions roof exposure the floor of a seam floor sampling barren' rock barren ore exploratory wells oil wells

slope working removing a mineral-bearing substance

overburden removal the immediate extraction of useful

mineral recovery

steeply inclined seams

5. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корилми соответствующих слов в русском языке:

the term "mining"; non-metallic minerals; the tendency in mining; the exploitation of lower-grade metal-bearing substances: the type of mining; the problem of depth; the mining method; the metal-bearing mass; vertical and horizontal mine workings; to vary in shape, dimensions, location and function; to classify mine workings

- 6. Определяте значение слова drive в контексте:
- 1. Sloping exploratory shafts are usually driven in the mineral. They produce mineral during driving and it can be sampled and tested.
- 2. One of the main parts of a mining machine is the drive which can work either on compressed air or electricity.
- 3. Many miners can drive combines which are widely used underground now. They are called combine drivers.
- 7. Прочитайте текст А. Найдите в тексте абзац, в котором говорится о горных выработках и их назначении:

#### TEKCT A

# General Information on Mining

As has been said, mining refers to actual ore extraction. Broadly speaking, mining is the industrial process of removing a mineral-bearing substance from the place of its natural occurrence in the Earth's crust. The term "mining" includes the recovery of oil and gas from wells; metal, non-metallic minerals, coal, peat, oil shale and other hydrocarbons from the earth. In other words, the work done to extract mineral, or to prepare for its extraction is called mining.

The tendency in mining has been towards the increased use of mining machinery so that modern mines are characterized by tremendous capacities. This has contributed to: 1) improving working conditions and raising labour productivity; 2) the exploitation of lower-grade metal-bearing substances and 3) the building of mines of great dimensions.

Mining can be done either as a surface operation (quarries, opencasts or open pits) or by an underground method. The mode of occurrence of the sought-for metallic substance governs to a large degree the type of mining that is practised. The problem of depth also affects the mining method. If the rock containing the metallic substance is at a shallow site and is massive, it may be economically excavated by a pit or quarry-like opening on the surface. If the metal-bearing mass is tabular, as a bed or vein, and goes to a great distance beneath the surface, then it will be worked by some method of underground mining.

Working or exploiting the deposit means the extraction of mineral. With this point in view a number of underground workings is driven in barren (waste) rock and in mineral. Mine workings vary in shape, dimensions, location and function.

Depending on their function mine workings are described as exploratory, if they are driven with a view to finding or proving mineral, and as productive if they are used for the immediate extraction of useful mineral. Productive mining can be divided into capital investment work, development work, and face or production work. Investment work aims at ensuring access to the deposit from the surface. Development work prepares for the face work, and mineral is extracted (or produced) in bulk.

The rock surfaces at the sides of workings are called the sides, or in coal, the ribs. The surface above the workings is the roof in coal mining while in metal mining it is called the back. The surface below is called the floor.

The factors such as function, direct access to the surface, driving in mineral or in barren rock can be used for classifying mine workings:

- I. Underground workings:
- a) Long or deep by comparison with their cross-section may be: 1) vertical (shaft, blind pit); 2) sloping (slopes, sloping drifts, inclines); 3) horizontal (drifts, levels, drives, gate roads, adits, crosscuts).
- b) Large openings having cross dimensions comparable with their length.
- c) Production faces, whose dimensions depend on the thickness of the deposit being worked, and on the method of mining it.
  - II. Opencasts.

#### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 8. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. As a rule, the term "mining" includes the recovery of oil and gas from wells as well as coal, iron ores and other useful minerals from the earth.
- 2. The increased use of mining machinery has greatly contributed to raising labour productivity and improving working conditions.
- 3. It is quite obvious that the problem of depth is not always taken into consideration in choosing the mining method.
- 4. Productive workings are usually used for the immediate extraction of useful mineral.
  - 5. Underground workings are driven in barren rock or in mineral.
- 6. A shaft is a vertical underground working which is long and deep in comparison with its cross-section.
  - 7. The surface above the mine working is usually called the floor.
  - 8. The rock surfaces at the sides of mine workings are called the ribs.
  - 9. Ответьте на следующие вовросы:
  - 1. What is mining?
- 2. What has contributed to the better working conditions of the miners?
  - 3. What factors influence the choice of the mining method?
  - 4. In what case is useful mineral worked by open pits?
- 5. Are exploratory workings driven with a view to finding and proving mineral or are they driven for immediate extraction of mineral?

- 6. What is the difference between development and production work?
  - 7. What main factors are used for classifying mine workings?
  - 8. What do the dimensions of production faces depend on?
- а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов;
  - 1, direct access to the surface
  - 2. open-cast mining
  - 3. tabular (or bedded) deposits
  - 4. oil well
  - 5. underground workings
  - 6. cross-section of a working
  - 7. production face
  - 8. the roof of the mine working
  - 9. to drive mine workings in barren rock
  - 10. to affect the mining method

- а) нефтяная скважина
- б) проходить горные выработки по пустой породе
- в) влиять на метод разработки
- г) прямой доступ к поверхности
- д) пластовые месторождения
- е) открытая разработка
- ж) поперечное сечение выработки
- з) подземные выработки
- и) очистной забой
- к) кровля горной выработки
- б) Найдите в правой колонке английские экзиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов;
  - 1. способствовать чему-л.
  - 2. размер ствола
  - 3. извлекать, добывать (уголь)
  - 4. штреки и квериляги
  - 5. пустая порода
  - 6. вообще говоря
  - 7. удалять, перемещать (крепь, вскрышу и др.)
  - 8. с целью ...
  - 9. подготовительные работы
  - 10. мошность пласта

- a) thickness of a seam
- 6) shaft dimension
- B) with a view to
- r) to contribute to smth.
- д) development work
- e) to remove (timber, overburden,
- ж) drifts (gate roads) and crosscuts
- generally speaking
- и) to recover (coal)
- k) waste (barren) rock
- 11. Подберите на списков А и Б близкие по значению слова:

A.

- 1. improve
- 2. rank
- 3. ensure
- 4. use
- 5. tabular
- 6. crop out (outcrop)
- 7. barren rock
- 8. quarry
- influence
- 10. rib
- 11. size
- 12. broadly speaking
- 13. take into consideration

- Б.
- a) bedded
- 6) take into account
- B) make better
- r) waste (country) rock
- д) expose
- e) affect
- x) generally speaking
- 3) apply
- и) open pit
- k) dimension
- л) side
- м) grade
- н) guarantee

- 12. Переведите предложения, обращая винмание на перевод условных вридаточных предложений и союзов:
- 1. If the geological and prospecting indications are known, it is possible, even before prospecting proper begins, to forecast not only the type of economic deposit that may be found in the given conditions but also the associated elements and the whole complex of forecasting minerals.
- 2. Provided the geologists make use of proper prospecting methods, they will get necessary results.
- 3. On condition that different types of ores are to be tested separately each sample should represent a definite type of ore.
- 4. Unless the face is directly connected to the upper level, the combine does not cut the face for its whole length.
  - 13. Заполните пропуски соответствующей формой глагола в скобках:
- 1. Unless metamorphic rocks (to be studied) carefully, geologists cannot be sure of their origin.
- 2. If the mass of magma (to be) large, the rate of cooling will be slow.
- 3. If the earth (to be made) of the same material from the surface downward, its density would vary with pressure.
- 4. Provided geological conditions permit, efficient coal face operations (to be) possible.
- 5. We really will not survive unless we (to start) working on cleaner, safer sources of energy.
  - 6. If you learned to type, you (to find) the job quite easily.
  - 7. If he were here, I (can explain) to him myself.
- 8. They would have been here by now if they (to catch) the early train.
  - 9. I (not to believe) it possible, if I hadn't seen it happen.

# 14. Соедините главные предложения с придаточными:

- 1. It is possible to use trenches a) provided at some distance for exploration
- 2. Mine workings are considered 6) if the latter is blended with to be productive
- 3. Rock will not easily cleave
- from the floor there is a waste bed which must be separated from mineral.
- bituminous coal.
- B) on condition that the thickness of overburden is small.

- 4. A bedded deposit is to be worked by underground mining
- 5. Bituminous coal will improve д) if they are driven with a coking quality of anthracite
- 6. The cutter-loader will cut coal above the floor
- view to extracting useful mineral.

is disturbed

r) unless its schistose structure

- e) if it lies at a great distance from the surface.
- 15. Найдите в тексте А условные предложения и переведите их.
- 16. Переведите предложения, используя предлагаемые слова и сочетания слов:

useful mineral; to drive mine workings; exploratory and productive mine workings; barren (waste) rock; it is necessary; to contribute to; both ... and; a number of: the output

- 1. Горные выработки могут быть разведочными и эксплуаташионными.
- 2. Горные выработки могут проводиться как по полезному ископаемому, так и по пустой породе.
- 3. Для разработки более глубоких частей пласта необходимо проводить ряд подземных выработок, которые могут быть вертикальными, горизонтальными и наклонными.
- 4. Механизация горных операций способствует увеличению лобычи полезного ископаемого.
  - 17. Закожчите предложения подходящими по смыслу словами из текста А:
- 1. Generally speaking mining is a branch of industry. It deals with .....
- 2. Mechanization and automation have come into use underground. The miners realize that the increased use of mining machinery will ... .
- 3. Many factors affect the choice of the mining method. In case the deposit ....
- 4. It should be noticed that mine workings may have different functions. Let us consider, for example, productive workings which ... .
- 5. As for the classification of mine workings one should take into consideration the factors ....
- 6. If we have to describe underground workings, we shall divide them into ...

- Суммируйте содержание текста А по плану, используя слова, данные в скобках.
- 1. Mining as the industrial process. (includes, is called, the tendency has been towards, are characterized, has contributed to)
- 2. Underground and open-cast mining. (can be done, governs, affects, may be economically excavated by, it can be worked by)
- 3. The type of mine workings, their main functions and classification. (are driven, mine workings vary in ...)

#### Б

### ГРАММАТИКА

### 1. Многофункциональность глаголов to be и to have

Tharon to be

Самостоятельный	Модальный	Вспомогательный
глагол	глагол	глагол
В значении «быть, находиться, являться»:  There are no easy answers.  Hem (не существует) легких ответов.  The pump is in the machine house near the colliery.  Насос находится около (рядом с) шахты (шахтой) в машинном отделении.	stalled at the surface.  Насос следует уста- новить на поверхности.  Each participant was	1. Образует а) времена группы Continuous (в сочетании с Partici ple I): The pump is working at the rate of 50 gallons per minute. Насос работает с производительностью 50 галлонов в минуту. б) страдательный залог (Passive Voice) в сочетании с Partici ple II: The pump was installed at the surface. Насос установили на поверхности. 2. Является частью составного сказуемого с существительным, прилагательным и т.д.: The pump is powerful. Этот насос мощный. Магу'з upstairs. Мэри наверху.

Глагол to have

Само: тоятельный	Модальный	Вспомогательный		
глагол	глагол	глагол		
В значении «иметь, обладать»:  They have (got) two children.  У них двое детей (букв. они имеют).  The pump has a 40 h.p. drive. У насоса привод в 40 л.с.	гого глагола выражает долженствование, необходимость:  The pump had to be installed at the surface.	группы Perfect (c Participle II):  They have not installed		

# 2. Отрицательные предложения

В английском языке в отрицательном предложении может быть только одно отрицание, которое относится к одному из трех членов предложения (подлежащему, сказуемому или дополнению). Если отрицание стоит перед подлежащим или дополнением, то глагол-сказуемое употребляется в утвердительной форме.

1) Отрицание относится к подлежащему (выражено отрицательным местоимением по никакой):

No folds were noticed in the exposed rocks.

Никаких складок в обнаженных породах не было замечено.

2) Отрицание относится к *дополнению* (выражено местоимением **по**):

Old mines had **no** powered **supports**.

Старые шахты не имели механизированной крепи.

3) Отрицание относится к глаголу-сказуемому (выражено отрицательной формой глагола):

The students did not take the examinations in mining last year. В прошлом году студенты *не* сдавали экзамен по горному делу.

В русском языке, в отличие от английского, может быть употреблено несколько отрицаний в одном и том же отрицательном предложении. Сравните:

Он никогда никому об этом не говорил. (три отрицания) He has never told anybody about it. (odno ompuqanue)

#### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

#### 19. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

[1] - dip, 'dipping, give, 'given, 'pillar, 'minimum

[i:] - steep, seam, ex'ceed, reach, these, ma'chine, 'sequence

[o] - 'composite, de'posit, 'monitor, long, pre'dominate

[o:] - short, all, wall, hy'draulic, trans'port

[u:] - room, re'move, im'prove, im'provement

[ju:] - use, used, re'duced, pro'duced

[al] - right, wide, 'widely, 'primary, ho'rizon

[æ] — 'rational, 'maximum, 'factor

#### б) Прочитайте следующие географические названия и запомните их произвошение:

Australia [o:s'treɪljə], Canada ['kænədə], France [fra:ns], India ['indiə], Ruhr [ru:r], Germany ['dʒə:məni]

 Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постапайтесь запомнить их.

advantage [əd'vɑ:ntidʒ] n преимущество; превосходство; выгода; польза; advantageous [.ædvən-'teidʒəs] a выгодный; благоприятный, полезный; to take advantage of smth воспользоваться чем-л.

caving ['kelviŋ] n обрушение (кровли); разработка с обрушением

deliver [di'livə] v доставлять, подавать; питать; нагнетать; произносить (речь); читать (лекцию)

entry ['entri] n штрек; выработка горизонтальная; pl подготовительные выработки; нарезные выработки; штреки

giant ['daalent] и гидромонитор

gravity ['græviti] и силя тяжести; вес, тяжесть; by ~ самотеком, под действием собственного веса

haul [hɔ:l] v доставлять; откатывать; подкатывать; перевозить; haulage ['hɔ:lidʒ] n откатка; доставка; транспортировка (по горизонтали)

longwall ['lonwo:l] п лава; выемка лавами; сплошной забой, сплош-

ная или столбовая система разработки; syn continuous mining; ~ advancing on the strike выемка лавами прямым холом по простиранию: сплошная система разработки по простиранию: ~ advancing to the rise сплошная система разработки с выемкой восстанию: ~ to the сплошная система разработки с выемкой по падению; ~ retreating выемка лавами обратным ходом; столбовая система разработки лавами

lose [lu:z] (lost) v терять; loss n потеря, убыток

notwithstanding [,nɔtwiθ'stændɪŋ]

prep несмотря на; вопреки

ptilar ['рна] п целик; столб; shaft ~ околоствольный целик; ~ method столбовая система разработки; ~ mining выемка целиков

ргеdominate [рп'domineit] и преобладать, превалировать; превосходить; господствовать, доминировать

protect [prə'tekt] и охранять, зашишать reach [ri:tj] и простираться, доходить до; добиваться, достигать

room [ru:m] n камера; очистная камера; room-and-pillar method камерно-столбовая система разработки antisty ['setisfal] у удовлетворять (ся)
shield [fi:ld] и щит; ~ method щитовой метод проходки, щитовой способ
stowing ['stoum] и закладка (выра-

stowing ['stouin] и закладка (выработанного пространства)

method of working система разработки the sequence of working the seams последовательность отработки пластов

21. Определите во суффиксам и префиксам, какой частью речи явлиются следующие слова, и переведите их:

create - creation - creative - creator

consider - considerable - consideration

deliver - delivering - delivery - deliverer

exist — existing — existence

level - sublevel

improve - improved - improvement

protect - protective - protection

produce - production - productive - productivity - product

thick - thickness

satisfy - satisfaction - satisfactory

22. Переведите следующие слова с префиксом dis-:

disable, disadvantage, disagree, disapprove, disclose, disconnect, discover

# 23. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

methods of working development work minimum losses of mineral gently sloping seams to be rich in (smth) main advantages and disadvantages of (smth) in any particular conditions room-and-pillar mining coal getting (coal winning) the sequence of operations

considerable number of mining methods production faces to take advantage of (smth) to satisfy the requirements ore caving mechanized stowing continuous mining additional haulage the choice of the method of mining

24. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

mining machines; maximum production cost; minimum losses of mineral; characteristic features of continuous mining; the use of combines and conveyers; the difficulty of ventilation; hydraulic mining; the most economic and advantageous methods of coal getting; to win coal by monitors; a rational method of working

 Прочитайте текст Б. Скяжите, какие системы разработки пластовых месторождений описаны в тексте.

#### TEKCT B

# Methods of Working Bedded Deposits Underground

The method of working (or method of mining) includes a definite sequence and organization of development work of a deposit, its openings and its face work in certain geological conditions. It depends on the mining plan and machines and develops with their improvements.

A rational method of working should satisfy the following requirements in any particular conditions: 1) safety of the man; 2) maximum output of mineral; 3) minimum development work (per 1,000 tons output); 4) minimum production cost and 5) minimum losses of mineral.

Notwithstanding the considerable number of mining methods in existence, they can be reduced to the following main types: 1. Methods of working with long faces (continuous mining); 2. Methods of working with short faces (room-and-pillar).

The characteristic feature of the continuous mining (Figs. 5 and 6) is the absence of any development openings made in advance of production faces. The main advantage of long continuous faces is that they yield more mineral. Besides, they allow the maximum use of combines (shearers), cutting machines, powered supports and conveyers. The longwall method permits an almost 100 per cent recovery of mineral instead of 50 to 80 per cent obtainable in roomand-pillar methods.

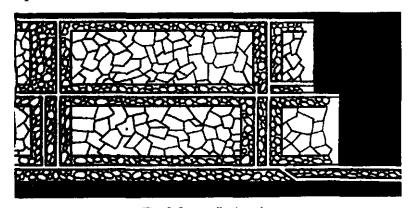


Fig. 5. Longwall advancing

The basic principle of room-and-pillar method (Fig. 7) is that rooms from 4 to 12 metres wide (usually 6-7) are driven from the entries, each room is separated from each other by a rib pillar. Rib pillars are recovered or robbed after the rooms are excavated. The main disadvantage of shortwall work is a considerable loss of mineral and the difficulty of ventilation. In working bedded deposits methods of mining mentioned above may be used either with stowing or with caving.

In Russia, Germany (the Ruhr coal-field), France and Belgium nearly all the faces are now long ones. In Britain longwall faces predominate.

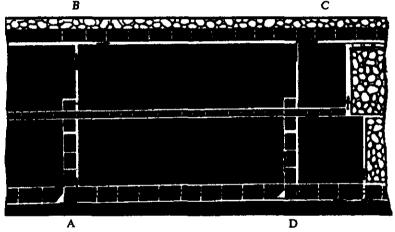


Fig. 6. Longwall retreating by long panels

The USA, Canada, Australia and to some extent India are developing shortwall faces and creating the machines for them. In these countries shortwall faces are widely used.

In Russia the thick seams are taken out to full thickness up to 4.5 m thick if they are steep, and up to 3.5 m thick if they are gently sloping or inclined. In the Kuznetsk coal-field long faces are worked to the dip with ashield protection, using amethod proposed by N.Chinakal. In shield mining coal is delivered to the lower working by gravity so that additional haulage is not required (Fig. 8).

It should also be noted that in Russia hydraulic mining is widely used as it is one of the most economic and advantageous methods of coal getting. New hydraulic mines are coming into use in a number of coal-fields. Hydraulic mining is developing in other countries as well.

The aim of hydraulic mining is to remove coal by the monitors (or giants) which win coal and transport it hydraulically from the place of work right to the surface.

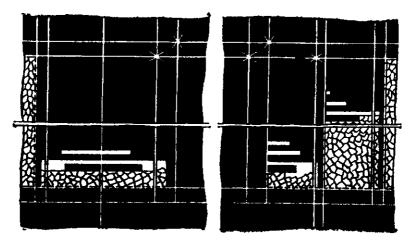


Fig. 7. Room-and-pillar method for working a gently sloping seam

It is quite obvious that the choice of the method of mining will primarily depend on the depth and the shape and the general type of the deposit.

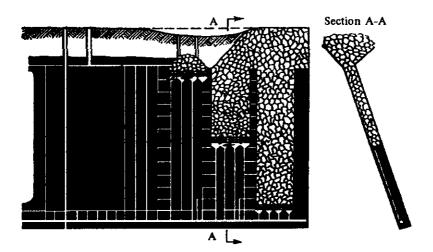


Fig. 8. Shield method of working

#### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 26. Укажите, накие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из чекста Б.
- 1. A definite sequence and organization of development work is called mining.
- 2. Mining methods in existence can be reduced to the two main types.
- 3. The depth and the shape of the deposit influence the choice of the method of working.
- 4. As is known, in Belgium all the faces are short now, in Great Britain they amount to 84 per cent.
  - 5. In Australian collieries shortwall faces are widely used.
- 6. The room-and-pillar method is characterized by the absence of any development openings.
- 7. N. Chinakal worked out the shield method of mining which is used in Kuzbas.
- 8. High-capacity monitors win coal and transport it hydraulically right to the surface.

#### 27. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What factors does mining depend on?
- 2. What is mining?
- 3. What are the most important factors which affect the choice of the method of working?
- 4. Do short faces or long faces predominate in Russia? What can you say about the Ruhr coal-field?
- 5. Is Canada developing shortwall faces or longwall faces? What can you say about the USA?
  - 6. What are the main disadvantages of shortwall faces?
  - 7. What are the two main methods of working?
  - 8. What is the main advantage of long continuous faces?
  - 9. What methods of mining long faces do you know?
- 10. What method of mining is characterized by the absence of development openings?

# 28. a) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:

- 1. development face
- 2. great losses
- 3. shield method of mining
- 4. continuous mining

- а) сплошная система разработки
- б) высмка целиков
- в) подготовительный забой
- г) большие потери

- 5. longwall advancing to the dip
- the room-and-pillar method of mining
- 7. to open up a deposit
- 8. pillar mining
- 9. to satisfy the requirements
- 10. to depend upon the geological conditions
- д) удовлетворять требованиям
- е) зависеть от геологических условий
- ж) выемка лавами прямым ходом по падению
- з) щитовая система разработки
- и) вскрывать месторождение
- к) камерно-столбовая система разработки

#### б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов;

- 1. включать (в себя)
- 2. выемка лавами обратным ходом
- 3. достигать 50%
- превышать 60%
- 5. безопасность
- б. головая добыча
- основной недостаток системы разработки
- 8. под-этаж
- 9. крутопадающий пласт
- 10. щитовая система разработки
- 11. предложить новый способ разработки
- 12. в связи с трудностями
- 13. несмотря на
- 14. вскрывать месторождение

- a) safety
- б) annual output
- B) to involve
- r) to propose a new method of mining
- д) longwall retreating
- e) in connection with difficulties
- ж) to exceed 60 per cent
- 3) notwithstanding (in spite of)
- и) to reach 50 per cent
- k) the main disadvantage of the method of mining
- л) sublevel
- м) the shield method of mining
- н) open up a deposit
- o) steep seam

### 29. Заполинте пропуски в предложениях, используя следующие слова:

# advantage disadvantage advantageous

- 1. As is known, the ... of long continuous faces is that they permit an almost 100 per cent of recovery of mineral.
- 2. Hydraulic mining is practised extensively at a number of collieries. It is one of the ... methods of mining.
- 3. As for the room-and-pillar method one must say that this method of mining is seldom practised in Russia because it has some ...s.
- 4. One of these ...s is that the pillars between the rooms are partly extracted.
- 30. Переведите на английский язык сочетания с предлогами рег (в, на) и instead (оf) (взамен, вместо):
- в сутки; в месяц; на тонну; вместо угля; вместо камерностолбовой системы разработки

- 31. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на развые значения и функции глаголов to be и to have:
- 1. The various methods of mining involve production faces which are either long (longwall) or short (shortwall) or room-and-pillar.
- 2. Until mining machines were developed, short faces predominated.
- 3. The aim was to reduce the volume of development work by using the longwall method.
- 4. Some disadvantages of shortwall work are a considerable loss of mineral which may reach and exceed 40 per cent, and the difficulty of ventilation.
- 5. In gassy mines each face with its development workings has to be ventilated with its own air current.
- 6. Cutter-loaders are being widely applied underground now because these machines are the most progressive means for mechanizing coal winning.
- 7. It is necessary to study all the factors which influence the choice of the mining method.
- 8. There are special methods of extracting seams which are close together (сближенные).
- 9. The shield method of mining has to be introduced in thick seams, dipping at an angle of not less than 55-60°, with regular occurrence and hard coal.
- 10. They have to introduce new mining equipment as soon as possible.
- 32. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на разные способы выражения отрицания:
- 1. As the longwall method permits an almost 100 per cent recovery of coal, all the seam is extracted and there is no coal left in the form of pillars, except the shaft pillar.
  - 2. No fissures were found.
- 3. We do not use the room-and-pillar method on a wide scale because it is characterized by high losses of coal.
- 4. Nothing was said about special ways of extracting thick seams.
- 5. In manless faces no men operate the machines, you can see nobody in such faces as all the processes are fully automated.
- 6. A level is a horizontal road with no direct access to the surface.

33. Выразите несогласие и подтвердите свою точку зрения фактами из текста Б, используя следующие разговорные формулы:

on the contrary; to my mind; in my opinion; as far as I know; as is known; I'd like to stress that; I'd like to say that; let us consider

- 1. We say that the method of mining is rational if it guarantees only safety of the men and maximum output of mineral.
- 2. It is rather difficult to define which method of mining (longwall or shortwall) is more often used in Russia.
- 3. The shield method of mining is used where short faces are worked. It is used in all the coal-fields of Russia.
- 4. The problem of extracting thick seams is not difficult. As a rule, such seams are not extracted to full thickness.
- 5. In applying hydraulic mining powerful cutter-loaders win coal and transport it to the surface.

#### Суммируйте содержание текста Б. При этом ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What does the method of mining mineral deposits underground involve?
  - 2. What main requirements should mining methods satisfy?
- 3. What types of production faces do the methods of mining include?
- 4. What can you say about their application in different coal-producing countries?
- 5. What methods of mining are practised in the Kuznetsk coal-field?

# 35. Расскажите вашим друзьям о посещении шахты по следующему плану, используя слова в скобках:

- 1. The Location of the Mine, Its Geological Conditions (folds, faults, disturbances, depth, seams, thick, sloping, steep, inclined). Try to explain why underground mining is used there.
  - 2. The Type of the Deposit (tabular, bedded, vein).
  - 3. The Method of Mining (longwall, room-and-pillar).
- 4. Mine Workings, Their Functions (vertical, horizontal, inclined).
  - 5. Average Output (annual, daily).

B

- 36. Прочитайте заголовок и аннотацию к тексту В и скажите, о чем говорится в тексте В.
- 37. Прочитайте текст и скажите, как ведется борьба с метаном на шахтах Карагандинского угольного бассейна.

Слова для понимания текста:

goaf — Завал; обрушенное пространство

double-ended drum hearer — комбайн с двойным барабаном

#### TEKCT B

### Mining Thick Seams

Longwall retreating is one of the primary methods of mining in many coal mining areas. There is a high degree of mechanization, and mine safety is receiving an increasing amount of emphasis.

Thick seam coal mining is important in Russia. Many high-quality coal seams exceed 35 metres (12 feet) in thickness — the normally accepted classification for a thick seam (although this varies in different countries). Some of these thick seams are of key importance in major mining basins. Seam thickness is the most significant factor which is taken into account in mining practice. The increasing strata movement with increasing seam thickness requires not only specialized extraction techniques, but also highly specialized ground control and support methods. This is certainly true of the coal basins where coal seams are gassy and the majority of coal is liable to spontaneous combustion. Coal seams occur at a depth of between 350 and 710 metres (1,150 and 2,330 feet).

Longwall retreating is the primary method of mining at the collieries with more than 98 per cent of the total output. Application of a mining method with the coal face being advanced down the dip is steadily expanding; shortwall pillar extraction with power loaders is being successfully employed.

Coal faces and development headings are equipped with instruments for automatic gas protection and centralized telemonitoring of methane content. Data on gas conditions in development headings which are particularly dangerous from the viewpoint of methane content, and in all coal faces are transmitted to the mine dispatcher's control panel. In order to reduce gas content in mine workings, extensive use is made of preliminary gas drainage of the coal seams, gas drainage of roofs to be caved and also of the goaf.

The main trend in mine transport is towards high-capacity automatic conveyer systems. In underground workings transport of men and materials is by high-capacity electric locomotives; in incline roadways, by ropeways, floor-mounted haulage and up-to-date hoisting installations.

The mining district is usually developed by mine shafts. The mining method is longwall retreating along the strike and down the dip. The mining area is divided into two blocks east and west. In the eastern block, the panels are mined down the dip, in the western block, mining takes place along the strike. The faces are 200 metres long and operate along the strike of the seam. Sandstone forms the immediate roof and floor of the seam. Each face is mining a 3.5-metre thick section of coal, and a 0.5 to 0.8 metre thick pillar (band) of coal is left between two panels to form the roof of the lower face.

Each face is equipped with a double-ended drum shearer. The drums are 1.8 metres in diameter and a 0.6-metre web of coal. The leading drum cuts the top section of the face, and the trailing drum cuts the bottom section. Water jets are fitted to the drums for dust suppression. Coal passes along the face on the armoured face conveyer to the crusher installed at the main gate end of the conveyer, which reduces the size of the coal before it is delivered to a beam stage loader in the main gate.

The faces are operated on two production shifts and one maintenance shift per day.

Each face is supported by shield supports.

It should be stressed that special attention is paid to underground methane drainage. The methane is pumped through pipes first to the tail gate and then through the mine gate to the upcast shafts and then to the surface, where it is used for heating. Two sensors for continuously monitoring the emission of CH<sub>4</sub> are situated in the top panel, one in the main gate, and the other in the tail gate. These are placed 20 metres in front of the face. The control room at the mine's surface automatically monitors and records CH<sub>4</sub> emissions throughout the mine.

In coal face and development operations, use is made of current forecasting of the liability to sudden outbursts, that is establishing dangerous and non-dangerous zones.

All coal faces are equipped with mechanized complexes, comprising power loaders. In underground haulage roadways, use is made of high-capacity belt and apron conveyers. Coal is hoisted to the surface through two skip shafts. Monorails are widely used on levels for transport of materials and equipment to coal faces and

development headings. Some of production processes are automatic.

- 38. а) Разделите текст В на логические части. Озаглавьте каждую часть текста.
- б) Выделите ключевые слова в каждом абзаце текста В. Сформунируйте основную мысль абзаца по ключевым словам.
  - 39. Обсудите следующие проблемы:
- 1. Thick seam mining and problems connected with their recovery.
  - 2. Mechanization used in mining thick seams.
  - 3. Underground methane drainage problems.

#### DISCUSSION

Вы прослушали лекции по геологии, горному делу, изучили соответствующие уроки данного учебника (Уроки 4-8). Теперь вам представляется возможность принять участие в обсуждении проблем, связанных с горным производством в целом. Для этого необходимо 1) ознакомиться с общей схемой горного производства; 2) изучить содержание статьи "An Overview of the Mining Industry". Желательно, чтобы студенты группы разделились на геологов и горных инженеров-разработчиков. Задача таких групп — осветить сферу своей деятельности в будущем на основании изученного материала.

#### Слова для понимания статьи:

to identify — опознавать appraisal — оценка susceptibility — чувствительность concealed — скрытый, не выходящий на поверхность crusher — дробилка concentration — обогащение blending — смешивание; составление шихты screen — сортировать (обыки. уголь); просеивать froth floatation — пенная флотация

core drilling — колонковое бурение to delineate — обрисовывать, описывать lender — заимодавец feasibility — возможность

теазинту — возможность in situ mining — повторная разработка месторождения в массиве screening — просеивание; грохочение

**processing** — обработка, разделение минералов

# An Overview of the Mining Industry

(General Characteristics)

According to the broadest definition, mining includes discovering, extracting and processing of all nonrenewable resources up to the point at which they are used for fabricating or for producing

energy. This broad definition includes the energy minerals such as coal, petroleum and natural gas; refined or processed metals such as copper, steel and the ferroalloys; and nonminerals such as diamonds, phosphate and potash. A much narrower definition of mining includes only crude or nonprocessed mine products, such as mineral ores and coal, and excludes petroleum and natural gas. We deal mainly with the major metals from the exploration and mining stages to the processing stage from which they are normally marketed for use in manufacturing.

The production of useful minerals involves several stages that are generally carried on by large mining firms, although small mining operations may engage in the initial stage. The first stage is exploration of areas identified by geological reports as possessing potential mineral resources. Modern exploration methods are quite sophisticated and include geological, geochemical and geophysical investigation; three-dimensional sampling by core drilling or other methods; laboratory analyses, including ore treatment, concentration, and recovery tests; and economic appraisal. The objective is to discover and evaluate an orebody that can be economically exploited.

Geochemical exploration is used to measure the chemical properties of the area surrounding the deposit in order to delineate abnormal chemical patterns that may be related to potentially economic mineral deposits. Geophysical investigations employ electronic equipment that can detect contrasts in such physical properties as specific gravity, electrical conductivity, heat conductivity, seismic velocity and magnetic susceptibility. Where much of the bedrock is concealed, telegeologic or remote sensing techniques measure various geologic properties from aircraft or satellites. Exploration is commonly carried on by teams of specialists that include geologists, geochemists and geophysicists. There are different levels of exploration beginning with regional geologic mapping of areas up to 50,000 square km (20,000 square miles) and ending with intensive investigations of orebodies by means of numerous drillings to obtain bulk samples which are then metallurgically tested to determine the dimensions and character of the orebody.

If the results of exploration activities suggest that an economical deposit has been found, the second stage involves engineering and economic evaluations of the mining project. It is on the basis of this study that companies decide whether to go ahead with a mining project; the study may also be reviewed by prospective

lenders. The feasibility study for a large mining project may be quite costly, running to \$25 million or more in some cases. The total cost of exploration and the feasibility study for a large mine may run to \$50 million or more. It is uncertain whether a profitable mine will be constructed until all the stages have been completed. In the initial exploration stage, several million dollars may be spent with less than a 10 per cent chance of a successful outcome.

The third stage is the construction of the mine, the metallurgical plant, and infrastructure. There are two basic types of operations to extract mineral ores: open-pit or surface mining, and underground mining. An open-pit mine is largely a quarrying operation that handles a large volume of material. Such mining involves drilling and blasting the ore and hauling it out of the pit in large trucks with capacities ranging up to 200 tons, or in ore trains. The ore is hauled to crushers and then to the metallurgical plant. In underground mining, shafts are dug into ore deposits below the surface, from which ore is drilled, blasted and removed through underground passages to the surface. Iron, bauxite and copper ores are extracted by means of open-pit mining, while lead, zinc, silver and gold are largely extracted by underground mining. There are also some underground copper mines. Economies of scale in open-pit mining permit the mining of relatively low-grade ores. As much as 100,000 tons of ore per day containing less than 1 per cent metal are extracted in the larger open-pit operations. Higher ore grades are necessary for underground mining to be profitable.

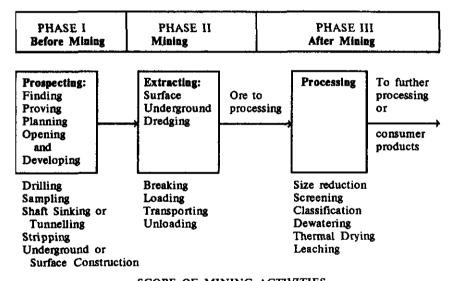
One recent advance in mining and processing of lower-grade ores is in situ mining. In situ mining may be defined as the extraction of metals from ores located within a mine (broken or fractured ore, caved material, slag heaps, etc.). These materials represent an enormous potential source of all types of metals.

Large mines involve huge capital outlays running to a billion dollars or more. The mining complexes usually include concentration of ores for production of concentrates with 25 per cent or higher metal content. In the case of copper, large mine complexes include plants for smelting copper or for producing copper metal by hydrometallurgical methods, but in the case of other metals such as gold, lead, zinc, tin and iron, metal is produced in separate plants which may or may not be owned by the mining company. The degree of processing that usually takes place at the mine differs widely among metals, but refining the product for market-

ing to fabricators nearly always takes place in separate plants that refine the products of several mines.

As is known, modern methods of processing are dense medium separation, jigging and froth floatation. Operations prior to coal preparation include: blending, screening, crushing, dewatering and others. The aim is to get clean coal for metallurgical plants, etc.

Since mines tend to be located far away from developed areas, infrastructure is often a substantial proportion of capital cost. It is frequently necessary to provide sources of power and water, as well as highways, railroads and port facilities. In addition the mining company may be responsible for constructing living quarters for workers and their families and for providing education and other public services required by the mining community.



SCOPE OF MINING ACTIVITIES

### На обсуждение выносятся следующие вопросы:

- 1. Using the scheme above speak about the main divisions of mining activities. What are they?
  - 2. What definition can you give to mining in general?
- 3. You are a geologist. What can you say about the main objectives of 1) exploration; 2) evaluation?

- 4. What is the difference between exploration and evaluation?
- 5. What else do you think "before mining activities include"?
- 6. Now we come to mining. What are the main mining methods? What factors should be taken into account in choosing this or that method of mining?
- 7. What is the role of economic factors in choosing a method of mining?
- 8. Do you know anything about in situ mining? When can it be used? What is the economic factor in using in situ mining?
  - 9. Can you say a few words about processing?
  - 10. What does infrastructure involve?
- 11. What conclusion can be drawn from what has been said? Sum up opinions of the participants in the conference.

Теперь выбирайте ведущего и начинайте обсуждение. Желаем успеха!

#### Фразы, которые помогут вам:

As a matter of fact
Broadly speaking
But this is what I mean
As I have said
I want to add
In conclusion let me say
Let me call your attention to
The discussion is due to
begin (to finish)
To sum up all that has
been said

As far as I know
But the fact is
Coming back to the main
problem (subject)
I have nothing more to say
In this brief survey (0630p)
The next point is
Time limit will not permit us
to continue the discussion
Well, the problem is

# UNIT 9 Mining and Environment

А. Грамматика

Независимый причастный оборот (The Absolute

Participle Construction).

Tekem A. Open-cast Mining.

Б Грамматика

1. Сложное предложение.

2. Согласование времен в косвенной речи.

Tekem B. Ore Mining.

B. Texcm B. Mining and the Environment.

### A

#### **ГРАММАТИКА**

# Независимый причастный оборот (The Absolute Participle Construction)

Обычно субъект причастного оборота совпадает с подлежащим предложения:

Not knowing what to do,

I telephoned the police.

(=Because I didn't know
what to do, ...)

Не зная, что делать, я позвонил в полицию.

Однако в научно-технической литературе вы можете встретить независимые причастные обороты.

В независимом причастном обороте имеется существительное без предлога (реже местоимение в именительном падеже), которое стоит перед причастием и по смыслу является субъектом действия, выраженного причастием. От основной части предложения этот оборот всегда отделяется запятой:

Oil consists of a mixture of hydrocarbons, some other compounds being also present.

Нефть состоит из смеси углеводородов, кроме того, в ней присутствуют также некоторые другие соединения. Если независимый причастный оборот стоит в начале предложения, то он переводится на русский язык обстоятельственным придаточным предложением причины, времени или условия.

Если независимый причастный оборот стоит в конце предложения, то он переводится на русский язык предложением, вводимым союзами причем, а, и:

Good results having been obtained, the researchers could continue the experiment.

At this mine the method of working is longwall, the faces being rather long.

После того как (Когда) были получены хорошие результаты, исследователи смогли продолжить эксперимент.

На этой шахте применяется система разработки длинными столбами, причем забои бывают достаточно длинными.

Субъект независимого причастного оборота может также вводиться предлогом with:

With Peter working in London, the house seemed empty.

Так как Питер работал в Лондоне, дом совсем опустел.

# ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

# 1. Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [æ] ex'tract, 'gravel, 'narrow, 'shallow, 'handle, 'latter
- [a:] 'opencast, part, hard, car, over'cast, over'casting
- [i:] cheap, heap, need, reach
- [A] 'shovel, 'number, pump, dump
- [e1] 'basic, 'breaking, de'cade, waste, rail
- [ou] open, load, un'load, 'process, whole, stone
- [au] doubt, mount, power, 'in'side, 'out'side
- 2. Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.

break [breik] v (broke [brouk], broken ['broukn]) отбивать (уголь или породу), обрушивать кровлю; разбивать; ломать; п отбойка, обрушение; break out отбивать, производить выемку (руды или породы); расширять забой; breakage п разрыхление, дробление

drill [dril] n бур; перфоратор; бурильный молоток; сверло; v бурить; саг ~ буровая тележка; mounted ~ перфоратор на колонке; колонковый бурильный молоток; drilling n бурение

dump [dлmp] п отвал (породы); склад угля; опрокид; external ~ внешний отвал; internal ~ внутренний отвал; v сваливать (в отвал); разгружать; отваливать; опрокидывать (вагонетку); dumper опрокид; самосвал; отвалообразователь; dumping п опрокидывание; опорожнение; опрокид; syn tip

environment [in'vaior(s)nmont] п окружение; окружающая обстановка/среда

explode [iks'ploud] v взрывать, подрывать; explosion [iks'plougn]
 n взрыв; explosive n взрывчатое вещество; а взрывчатый

friable ['fraiəbl] а рыхлый; хрупкий; рассыпчатый; слабый (о кровле)

handle ['hændi] v перегружать; доставлять; транспортировать; управлять машиной; n ручка; рукоять; скоба; handling n подача; погрузка; перекидка, доставка; транспортировка; обращение с машиной

heap [hi:p] и наваливать; нагребать; п породный отвал, терриконик; syn spoil ~, waste ~

hydraulicking [.hai'dro:likiŋ] и гидродобыча; гидромеханизированная разработка load [loud] у нагружать, грузить, наваливать; л груз; нагрузка; loader л погрузочная машина, навалочная машина, перегружатель; грузчик; cutter-loader комбайн, комбинированная горная машина

lorry ['lɔri] n грузовик; платформа; syn truck

mention ['menfn] и упоминать

overcasting ['ouvakq:stip] п перепопачивание (породы)

рамр [ратр] п насос; gravel ~ песковый насос; sludge ~ шламовый насос; v качать; накачивать; откачивать

reclamation [,reklə'meiʃn] п восстановление; осушение; извлечение крепи; ~ of land восстановление участка (после открытых работ)

sidecasting ['saidko:stin] и внешнее отвалообразование

site [sait] n участок, место; building ~ строительная площадка

slice [slais] п слой; slicing п высмка слоями, разработка слоями

strip [strip] v производить вскрышные работы; разрабатывать; очищать (лаву); вынимать породу или руду; п полоса, stripper п забойщик; вскрышной экскаватор; stripping п открытая разработка, открытые горные работы; вскрыща; вскрытие наносов unit ['ju:nit] п агрегат; установка;

unit ['ju:nit] и агрегат; установка; устройство; прибор; узел; секция; деталь; машина; механизм; единица измерения; участок

washery ['wɔjəri] и углемойка; рупомойка: моечный цех

to attract smb's attention привлекать чье-л. внимание not to mention ... не говоря уже о ...

3. Переведите на русский язык слова с префиксом de-, имеющим отрипательное значение:

deformation, demagnetization, demobilization, dewatering

### Определите по суффиксу, какой частью речи являются следующие слова. Переведите ях:

dig — digger — digging strip — stripper — stripping wash — washing — washery consume — consuming friable — friability dump — dumper — dumping load — unload — loader — loading — unloading explode — explosion — explosive depend — dependent — dependence — independence explore — exploration — exploring — exploratory remove — removal — removable — removing produce — production — productive — product — productivity — producer

### 5. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

strip mines
independent mechanical units
access to the deposit
handling equipment
mine cars
friable ground
overburden removal
an extracted area
low-grade deposits
land reclamation

waste heaps
exploratory workings
earth-moving equipment
car drills
gravel and sludge pumps
removal of waste rock
ore concentration plants
trends towards open-cast operations
searching for minerals

### Определите значения следующих слов во сходству их корпей с корпями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

horizontal slices; type of overburden; the whole production process; the following basic parts; mineral excavation; various mechanical handling equipment; specially equipped permanent stations; in harmony with environment

7. Прочитайте текст А. Назовите основные этаны и перечислите технологические процессы открытой разработки месторождений подезных ископлемых.

### TEKCT A

### Open-cast Mining

Minerals at shallow depths are extracted by open-cast mining which is cheaper than underground mining. Open-cast mining consists in removing the overburden, and other strata that lie above mineral or fuel deposits to recover them.

Opencasts or open-pit mines are in fact quarries for getting coal or metalliferous minerals. In the USA opencasts are called strip mines (strip pits).

All the surface excavations, waste heaps and equipment needed for extracting mineral in the open form an independent mining unit. An opencast is a long, wide and comparatively shallow working though it can reach 200 m or even more in depth.

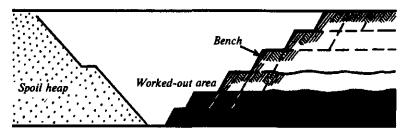


Fig. 9. Open-cast working

In opencasts the excavation is by horizontal slices corresponding to the type of mineral or overburden in slice. In Fig. 9 one can see the benches (or slices). A bench is a thickness of rock or mineral which is separately broken or excavated. Other open workings are called trenches, which are long, narrow, shallow exploratory workings.

The whole production process in opencasts can be divided into the following basic stages: 1) preparing the site to be worked; 2) dewatering it and preventing inflows of water to the site; 3) providing access (entry) to the deposit by the necessary permanent investment; 4) removal of overburden (stripping); 5) mineral excavation.

Stripping the overburden and mineral production include breaking rock or mineral, transporting it and loading it.

Minerals can often be dug directly by earth-moving equipment, while to break hard rocks it is necessary to use explosives.

Modern methods of working opencasts involve the use of mechanical plants or hydraulicking. The basic units of a mechanical plant are excavators, car drills or other mounted drills, and various mechanical handling equipment whereas the basic units of hydraulicking are monitors, pumps such as sludge pumps or gravel pumps. Hydraulicking can be used in soft or friable ground.

Transport operations involve the removal of waste rock or mineral, the latter being transported to coal washeries, ore concentration plants, to power stations, or to a railway station. Waste rock is removed to a spoil heap or dump (tip) either outside the deposit or in an extracted area, these being called external or internal dumps, respectively.

The transport used in opencasts are rail cars, large lorries, and conveyers. Sometimes the overburden is stripped and dumped by excavators without other transport, in overcasting or sidecasting.

Mineral is usually unloaded at specially equipped permanent stations. Waste rock is dumped at various points which are moved as the work develops.

Summing up, mention should be made of the fact that last decades have seen a marked trend towards open-cast operations. Large near-surface (though usually low-grade) deposits offer the possibility of achieving greater outputs. There can be little doubt that the cost per ton of ore mined by underground methods is generally higher than that for open-cast mining.

At the same time it is necessary to say that although efforts are made to develop mine sites in harmony with the environment, extraction methods produce some disturbances on the Earth's surface which reduce its economic value. In recent years Russia and other countries have developed national programmes for environmental protection. The aim of such programmes applicable to the mining industry is to control and protect natural resources and regulate reclamation and landscape restoration.

### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- 8. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
  - 1. An opencast is a long, shallow, narrow exploratory working.
  - 2. Explosives are used for excavating hard rocks.
- 3. Monitors, different types of pumps and other handling equipment are the basic units used in open-cast operations.
- 4. Waste rock is always removed to a spoil heap outside the deposit.
- 5. Large near-surface, usually low-grade deposits are extracted by the open-cast method.
  - 6. Open-cast mining has all the advantages of low-cost production.
  - 9. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:
  - 1. What deposits can be extracted by the open-cast method?
  - 2. What is called an opencast?
  - 3. What is the difference between a trench and an opencast?
- 4. Is the removal of overburden the first operation in open-cast mining?

- 5. In what case is it necessary to use explosives to break mineral?
  - 6. Is hydraulicking used only in open-cast mining?
  - 7. What equipment is used in hydraulicking?
  - 8. What transport systems are used in opencasts?
  - 9. Where is waste rock dumped?
  - 10. What is the main advantage of open-cast mining?
- а) Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:
  - i. to consume energy
  - 2. friable roof
  - 3. waste heap (spoil heap)
  - 4. sludge and gravel pumps
  - 5. automatic dumper
  - 6. mounted drill
  - 7. explosives
  - 8. overcasting
  - 9. slicing method
  - 10, not to mention ...

- а) автоматический опрокид
- б) не говоря о (чем-л.)
- в) перфоратор на колонке
- г) слоевая система разработки
- д) слабая кровля
- е) потреблять энергию
- ж) отвал, террикон
- з) песковый и шламовый насосы
- и) взрывчатые вещества
- к) перелопачивание
- б) Найдите в правой колонке английские эквиваленты следующих слов в сочетаний слов;
  - 1. участок (место)
  - 2. внешнее отвалообразование
  - 3. открытая разработка, вскрыша
  - 4. агрегат (установка)
  - 5. углемойка
  - 6. вскрыша; покрывающие породы
  - 7. гидродобыча
  - 8. грузовик
  - 9. привлекать чье-л. внимание
  - 10. восстановление ландшафта

- a) washery
- 6) overburden
- B) site
- r) sidecasting
- д) lorry (truck)
- e) to attract smb's attention
- ж) landscape restoration
- 3) unit
- и) stripping
- k) hydraulicking
- Подберите к глаголам из списка А соответствующие существительные из списка Б:

Α

- 1. to attract
- 2. to dump
- 3. to extract
- 4. to offer
- 5. to prepare
- 6. to prevent
- 7. to provide
- 8. to remove
- 9. to strip
- 10, to use

- D.
- a) the possibility of (doing smth)
- б) overburden
- B) waste rock at special points
- r) the site
- д) the attention
- e) inflows of water
- ж) mineral
- 3) access (entry) to the deposit
- и) waste rock to a spoil heap
- k) explosives

### 12. Подберите соответствующие определения к следующим словам:

### trenck underground mining open-cast mining bench quarry

- 1. The extraction of coal or ore from the seam or vein without the removal of overlying strata.
  - 2. A long, wide, comparatively shallow working.
  - 3. A thickness of rock which is separately broken and excavated.
  - 4. A long, narrow, comparatively shallow exploratory working.
- 5. The extraction of minerals from the exposed area after the removal of overburden.

# 13. а) Переведите предложения, обращая винмание на перевод независимого причастного оборота:

- 1. Mineral reserves suitable (пригодный) for open-cast mining in Russia are concentrated mostly in the eastern areas, with only small per cent of them being found in the European part, including the Ural Mountains.
- 2. The discovery of such deposits as coal, shale, iron, manganese, salts, sulphur, etc. is facilitated by their considerable dimensions and relatively large aerial distribution, the detection of concealed (скрытый) deposits being very much more difficult.
- 3. The most widely used hydraulic method of mining involves the use of water jets (струя), the method being increasingly used both underground and in quarries.
- 4. The type of power which drives mining machines can be either electricity or compressed air, most mining machines being electrically driven.
- 5. Russian coals are of high quality, only 20 per cent being brown coal.
- 6. Different kinds of exploratory drilling are used, their choice depending on the geological conditions of the deposit.
  - 7. The mine being gassy, flameproof equipment had to be used.
- 8. Reliable communication being essential on the surface and underground, automatic and remote control systems are widely used.
- б) Найдите в тексте А предложения, в которых употребляется независимый причастный оборот, и переведите их на русский язык.

## 14. Переведите предложения, обращая виниание на свособы выражения модальности в английском языке:

1. Large shovels are to be used in strip mines because they can handle all types of mineral, including blocky material.

- 2. Draglines are normally used for handling unconsolidated and softer material, but larger units can handle blasted rock. They may or may not require waste haulage equipment.
- 3. Scrapers have good mobility. Their use should be limited to soft and easily broken material for good production.
- 4. Bucket-wheel excavators must be widely used in open-cast mining for stripping overburden and excavating minerals.
- 5. Many factors have to be taken into consideration in designing various types of equipment which is to be utilized for stripping operations.
- 15. а) Найдите в тексте А и переведите предложения, в которых глаголсказуемое унотребляется в страдательном залоге.
- 6) Найдите в тексте А и переведите предложения, в которых употребляется: 1) герупдий; 2) причастные обороты; 3) инфинитив в функции определения; 4) сложноподчиненные предложения.
- 16. Переведите предложения, используя следующие слова и сочетания слов:

mineral excavation; waste rock; stripping the overburden; mechanical plants; hydraulicking; to include; to dump; transport-and-dumping bridge; friable and soft rocks

- 1. Вскрышные и добычные работы включают следующие процессы: выемку, транспортировку и разгрузку пустой породы и полезного ископаемого.
- 2. Современные способы открытой разработки месторождений полезных ископаемых включают механические и гидромеханические средства.
- 3. Гидромеханизацию применяют при разработке рыхлых и мягких пород.
  - 4. Экскаваторы применяются для отвалообразования.
- 5. Внутренние отвалы могут быть образованы при помощи транспортно-отвальных мостов.
  - 17. Закончите предложения соответствующими словами из текста А:
  - 1. In opencasts the excavation is ....
- 2. Before mineral is extracted, the following operations should be performed ....
  - 3. As for the handling equipment used, the basic units include ....
- 4. Open-cast mining as compared with underground mining has the following advantages ....

18. Суммируйте содержание текста А, используя следующие ключевые слова и выражения:

to be extracted

to be called

to be dug

to be removed

to be unloaded to be higher than ...

to include

to be divided into

to involve

to be stripped and dumped

to attract the attention of ...

- 19. Расскажите коротко о разработке полезных ископяемых открытым способом (см. рис. 9), ответив на следующие вопросы:
  - 1. What does Fig. 9 show?
  - 2. Is it a quarry or a trench?
- 3. What is the difference between the workings mentioned above?
  - 4. What minerals can be extracted by the open-cast method?
  - 5. What methods of excavation are used nowadays?
  - 6. What is a bench?
  - 7. Where is waste rock removed to?
  - 8. What types of dumps can be formed?
  - 9. What transport systems can be used in opencasts?
- 20. Скажите, в каком случае предпочтительнее разрабатывать новое месторождение открытым способом и почему. Дайте обоснование своего ответа.

Б

### **ГРАММАТИКА**

### 1. Сложное предложение

Союзы and *u*, but но, or или, either ... or или ... или, neither ... nor ни ... ни соединяют равноправные предложения в одно сложносочиненное.

The boy didn't want to study, Мальчик не хотел учиться, but his father made him. но отец заставил его.

В сложноподчиненном предложении придаточные предложения соединяются с главным при помощи союзов и союзных слов (последние сами являются членами придаточного предложения). Широко распространены сложные предложения с

придаточными дополнительными (вводятся союзами that что, whether, if ли, when когда, why почему, how как и др.); определительными (союзы who который, whose чей, which который, that который и др.) и обстоятельственными (времени, места, условия, причины, следствия и др.). Придаточные предложения времени вводятся союзами after после того как; before перед тем, как; прежде чем; while в то время как; as soon as как только; as когда, till/until до тех пор пока не, since с тех пор как и др. Придаточные предложения места вводятся союзами where где, wherever где бы ни; причины — союзами because потому что, as так как, since поскольку, for так как. Придаточные предложения условия были рассмотрены в Unit 8.

### 2. Согласование времен в косвенной речи

Особым типом придаточного определительного предложения является косвенная речь.

В косвенной речи говорящий передает чужое высказывание от своего имени с помощью сложного предложения с придаточным дополнительным. Правило согласования времен предполагает, что если в главном предложении (He said ... He asked ... He answered ...) глагол стоит в прошедшем времени, то в придаточном предложении употребляется

- 1) Past Indefinite, Continuous BMCCTO Present Indefinite, Continuous
  - 2) Past Perfect вместо Past Indefinite
  - 3) Future in the Past (would + инфинитив) вместо Future

Кроме того, местоимения заменяются по смыслу (сравните примеры ниже), а указательные местоимения и наречия заменяются следующим образом:

that	вместо	this
there	вместо	here
then	вместо	won
before	вместо	ago
the day before	вместо	yesterday
the next day	вместо	tomorrow

Внимательно изучите примеры:

## Прамая речь (Direct Speech)

1. He said: "I always come on time."

Он сказал: «Я всегда прихожу вовремя».

2. They said: "The new combine will work well."

Они сказали: «Новый комбайн будет работать хорошо».

3. He said: "I wrote the report yesterday."

Он сказал: «Я написал доклад вчера».

4. The mechanic said: "The pumps worked well some months ago."

Механик сказал: «Насосы работали хорошо несколько месяцев назал».

### Kochennan peris (Indirect Speech)

He said (that) he always came on time.

Он сказал, что он всегда приходит вовремя.

They said (that) the new combine would work well.

Они сказали, что новый комбайн будет работать хоро-

He said he had written the report the day before.

Он сказал, что он написал доклад накануне.

The mechanic said that the pumps had worked well some months before.

Механик сказал, что насосы работали хорошо несколько месяцев назал.

Если прямая речь содержит глагол в повелительном наклонении, то в косвенной речи он присоединяется к главному предложению в неопределенной форме:

He said: "Do it for me."
 Он сказал: «Сделай это для
 теня».

6. The secretary said: "Please, pass me the paper."

Секретарь сказала: «Передайте мне, пожалуйста, бумагу».

He asked to do it for him.

Он попросил сделать это для него.

The secretary asked to pass her the paper.

Секретарь попросила передать ей бумагу.

При переводе в косвенную речь вопросительных предложений последние присоединяются к главному предложению как придаточные при помощи if, whether ли, если это общий вопрос, и при помощи вопросительных слов, если это специальные вопросы. При этом соблюдаются правила согласования времен.

7. He said: "Will you come here tomorrow?"

Он спросил: «Вы придете сюда завтра?» He asked if (whether) I would come there the next day.

Он спросил меня, приду ли я туда на следующий день. 8. He said: "Where are you going?"

Он сказал: «Куда вы идете?»

9. She said: "You've annoyed him"

Она сказала: «Ты вывела его из себя».

10. He said: "Is it raining?"

Он сказал: «Идет дождь?»

He asked me where I was going.

Он спросил меня, куда я иду.

She told me I'd annoyed him.

Она сказала мне, что я вывела его из себя.

He asked if it was raining. Он спросил, идет ли дождь.

### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

### 21. Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

- [A] 'shovel, pump, dump, re'sult, crush, re'cover
- [æ] ex'tract, 'rational, 'access, 'handle, 'dragline
- [5:] haul, 'haulage, ore, su'pport, force
- [e1] same, rate, cave, 'caving, shape, 'safety
- [a1] pro'vide, size, site, 'highly, re'quire
- [ou] stope, 'stoping, 'open, load, un'load
- Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запоминть их.

backhoe ['bækhou] n обратная лопата

blast [blɑ:st] *п* вэрыв; *v* вэрывать; дуть; продувать; blasting *n* вэрывание; вэрывные работы; вэрывная отбойка

block out ['blok'aut] и нарезать залежь на блоки; нарезать столбы

clearing ['kliэгіŋ] л выравнивание почвы; планировка грунта

**стизh** {krʌʃ] у дробить; разрушать; обрушать(ся)

earth-mover ['э:9'mu:və] и землеройное оборудование; syn excavator

excavator ['ekskəveitə] n экскаватор; bucket-wheel ~ роторный экскаватор; multi-bucket ~ мно-гочерпаковый экскаватор; single-bucket ~ одночерпаковый экскаватор

grab (græb) и грейфер, ковш, черпак; экскаватор; и захватывать; grabbing погрузка грейфером; захватывание

hoist [hoist] п подъемное установка (машина); подъемник; лебедка; и поднимать; hoisting шахтный польем

plough [plau] n crpyr

power shovel ['pauə 'ʃʌvl] n механическая лопата; экскаватор типа механической лопаты

ганде [reind3] и колебание в определенных пределах

rate [reit] и норма; скорость, темп; коэффициент; степень; разрез; сорт; мощность; расход (воды)

remote [ri'mout] а отдаленный; совто дистанционное управление

result [п'zʌlt]  $\nu$  (in) приводить (к); · иметь своим результатом; (from) следовать (из), происходить в результате

safety ('seifu| и безопасность; техника безопасности stope [stoup] и забой, сплошной забой, очистной забой; и очищать забой, вынимать породу, уголь; syn face; stoping очистные работы; очистная выемка; open stoping выемка с открытым забоем; shrinkage stoping выемка системой с магазинированием (руды)

support [sə'pɔ:t] v крепить; поддерживать; подпирать; и стойка; опора; поддержание; крепление; syn timbering; powered roof ~ механизированная крепь; self-advancing powered roof ~ передвижная механизированная крепь

### 23. а) Переведите глаголы с префиксом ге-:

to reconstruct, to re-equip, to rebuild, to reassemble, to remove, to retool

- б) Заполинте пропуски глагодами с префиксом ге-, образованными от выделенных глагодов:
- 1. After the Great Patriotic War the people constructed and ... collieries, plants and factories.
- 2. They equipped and ... all the collieries with hoisting and ventilation machines.
- 3. Mining machines function in special conditions and under these conditions it is difficult to assemble and ... them.
- в) Определите по словообразовательным элементям (суффиксам и префиксам), какой частью речи являются следующие слова. Переведите ик:

slow — slowly
exist — pre-existing
sediment — sedimentary
small — smaller
volcano — volcanic
common — commonly

occur — occurrence
form — deform — deformation
thick — thickness
rapid — rapidly
important — importance
solidify — solidification — solidified —
unsolidified

### 24. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

the recovery of valuable minerals along the strike and down the dip country rock rate of extraction development drilling processing (dressing) plants earth-movers and power shovels open stoping shrinkage stoping low-cost open-cast mining annual iron ore output to ensure safety to result in increasing output

the shape of the deposit bedded deposits inclined and steep deposits site development overburden removal backhoes and dump trucks loading, hauling and hoisting of the rock block caving the capacity of mining enterprises to affect mining methods to support mining workings

25. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их кормей с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

metallic and non-metallic ore minerals; types of ore; the contact of the deposit with the country rock; rational methods of opening up a deposit; minimum cost of production; rate of extraction; potential ore body; general geological characteristics of an ore body; mining methods to be applied; draglines and earthmovers; blasting or separating portions of rock; millions of tons of iron ore per each mining enterprise

26. Прочитайте текст Б. Назовите основные системы разработки рудных месторождений.

### ТЕКСТ Б

### Ore Mining

As has already been said mining is a branch of industry which deals with the recovery of valuable minerals from the interior of the Earth.

When minerals occur so that they can be worked at a profit, they are called ore deposits. Economic minerals are those which are of economic importance and include both metallic (ore minerals) and non-metallic minerals such as building materials (sand, stone, etc.).

In choosing the methods of working ore deposits one must take into consideration the following main factors: 1) the shape of the deposit; 2) the dimensions of the deposit in thickness, along the strike and down the dip; 3) the type of ore and the distribution of metal in the ore body.

The shape of the ore deposit affects the mining method. Besides, the contact of the deposit with the country rock is of great importance.

According to their angle of dip the deposits are divided into gently sloping (up to 25°), inclined (25-45°) and steep deposits (45-90°). The thickness of ore deposits also varies. They may be very thin (from 0.7-0.8 m to 20 m) and extremely thick (more than 20 m).

One must say that a rational method of mining ensures the following: 1) safety; 2) minimum cost of production; 3) minimum losses of ore; 4) rate of extraction.

In metal mining as well as in mining bedded deposits preliminary activities (before mining) involve prospecting and

exploration required to locate, characterize and prove a potential ore body.

After exploration has provided information on the shape and size of a deposit and its general geological characteristics, site development for mining begins. Mine development depends largely upon the kind of ore body and the mining method to be applied. As a rule mine development work involves development drilling; access road construction; clearing and grubbing; adit, slope or shaft development; overburden removal, construction of facilities such as concentration (dressing, processing) plants, etc. The different type of equipment required range from small, simple units such as backhoes and dump trucks to earth-movers, draglines and power shovels.

Mining operations begin with excavation work (blasting or separating portions of rock from the solid mass), loading, hauling and hoisting of the rock to the surface and supporting mine workings.

Generally speaking, the working of an ore deposit involves opening up, development, blocking out and stoping operations, the basic stoping methods in use now being open stoping, room and pillar mining, shrinkage stoping, block caving and others.

After ores are mined or dredged, they are usually processed (crushed, concentrated or dried).

Extraction processes can be done by underground or open-cast mining. The main trend has been toward low-cost open-cast mining.

### **УПРАЖНЕНИЯ**

- Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста.
   Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. Ore deposits may be called economically workable natural concentrations of minerals.
- 2. It is quite enough to take into consideration the shape of the deposit for choosing its method of working.
  - 3. The thickness of ore deposits is a constant value.
  - 4. As a rule exploration provides information for mining.
- 5. Equipment of various types and capacities is readily available for rock excavation and it includes power shovels, backhoes, draglines, bucket wheel excavators, etc.
- 6. After mining or dredging ores are usually processed, crushed or dried.

### 28. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What minerals do we usually call economic?
- 2. Is the type of ore the only factor which the engineer takes into consideration in choosing the methods of working ore deposits?
  - 3. What does a rational method of mining guarantee?
  - 4. What does before mining activity include?
  - 5. What processes does development work involve?
  - 6. What basic stoping methods are in use now?
  - 7. What are the main methods of working bedded deposits?
  - 8. Is underground or open-cast mining preferable now? Why?
- 9. Can you give a few examples of the largest enterprises producing ores in the country?

### 29. Найдите в правой колонке русские эквиваленты следующих слов и сочетаний слов:

- 1. block caving
- 2. crushing and drying
- 3. power shovel
- 4. grabbing
- 5. to range (from ... to)
- 6. remote control
- 7. shrinkage stoping
- 8. waste heap
- 9. cutter-loader
- overcasting and sidecasting
- 11.stripping operations

- а) породный отвал, терриконик
- б) открытые горные работы, вскрыща
- в) блоковое (этажное) оборудование
- г) дробление и сушка
- д) врубо-погрузочная машина, горный комбайн
- е) колебаться (в определенных пределах)
- ж) погрузка грейфером
- з) дистанционное управление
- и) выемка системой с магазинированием
- к) механическая лопата, экскаватор
- л) перелопачивание и внешнее отвалообразование

### 30. Заполните пропуски приведенными словами:

### a) load loader loading

- 1. Mining machines which break out coal or rock from the face and ... it on the face conveyer are called either cutter...s or tunnelling machines.
- 2. According to the classification the mining machines are divided into three main groups: for breaking rock, for ... and transporting and setting supports.

### 6) cut cutter cutting

- 1. ...s are designed for cutting coal and other minerals, including rock salt, potash, tuff, limestone, etc.
  - 2. The ... mechanism of a coal-cutter may be a disk or a chain.
  - 3. The cutter can ... minerals of varying thickness.

### 31. Подберите из синсков А и Б близкие по значению слова:

A.	Б.	
i. iorry	a) spoil heap	
2. stope	6) user	
3. waste heap	B) excavator	
4. consumer	r) truck	
5. dumping	д) restrict	
6. earth-mover	e) excavator	
7. surface mining	ж) tip	
8. limit	3) open-cast mining (strip mining)	
9. power shovel	и) roof timbering	
10. roof support	к) face	

### 32. Определите, какой частью речи являются выделенные слова. Переведите предложения:

- 1. There exist various types of electric drills which are in use in rocks of different hardness.
- 2. To increase **drilling** speed, modern **drill** bits (коронка) are covered with hard alloy (сплав).
- 3. Using electric rotative drills it is possible to drill holes into coal and soft rock such as soft shales.
- 4. The Donbas cutter-loader wins and loads coal of low-to-medium hardness and anthracites in gently sloping seams under a roof of average strength.
  - 5. Scraper conveyers can convey great loads per hour.
- 6. As a measure of safety the shields protect face personnel and equipment from falling rock.
- 7. For the measurement of the pressure and speed of air there are special barometers which measure the absolute pressure of air.
  - 8. The drills for making holes have handles.
  - 9. It is rather difficult to handle the equipment underground.
  - 33. Заполните пропуски в предложениях, используя следующие предлоги:

# instead of because of by means of due to according to (in accordance with)

- 1. The rapid and much more accurate identification of new reserves and the ability to establish their quality, faulting, folding, mode of occurrence, etc. have become possible ... the reliability of new geological information.
- 2. In the most promising coal-producing areas the rail and road transport systems are used ... the complicated geological conditions.
  - 3. Steel supports are widely used now ... timber supports.
  - 4. Wheel scrapers are earth-moving units which are pulled ... a

drawbar (тяговый крюк) on the tractor, and its digging is controlled by the tractor.

- 5. Scrapers find wide application ... their high degree of mobility, high production rates, and their limited requirements for auxiliary support equipment.
  - 34. Употребите данные в скобках глаголы в соответствующей форме:

to carry out, to continue, to work, to develop, to create, to apply, to plan, to perform, to calculate; to work out

- 1. The mechanization and automation of underground processes (будет проводиться) on the basis of a wider use of winning complexes, powered roof supports, remote and automatic control and other modern equipment.
- 2. For this very purpose different cutter-loaders, winning complexes, loaders, pumps, fans, equipment for setting supports, etc. (создаются).
- 3. Now a wider use of conveyer belts for level and inclined workings and other means of automation (планируется).
- 4. Ore deposits (разрабатываются) by the underground and open-cast methods.
- 5. Automated systems of planning and control (применяются) in the mining industry.
- 6. Automated systems of planning and control (подсчитывают) wages, efficiency and (производят) other engineering calculations.
- 35. Переведите предложения, используя следующие разговорные формулы:

to take part in; to solve important problems; to keep in close touch with; to make a contribution (to); to take into consideration (to take into account); to design; reliable winning complex

- Научно-исследовательские институты поддерживают тесную связь с шахтами и карьерами.
- 2. Ученые и инженеры принимают активное участие в проектировании и создании надежных добычных комплексов, мощных экскаваторов и драглайнов, различных насосов и бурового оборудования.
- 3. Кроме того, они решают важные проблемы, связанные с современными способами транспортировки полезного ископаемого на поверхности, принимая во внимание геологические условия месторождения.
- 4. Русские ученые внесли большой вклад в разработку методов добычи полезных ископаемых.
  - 36. Суммируйте содержавие текста Б по следующему плану:
  - 1. The importance of working economic minerals.

- 2. The main factors to be considered in choosing the methods of working ore deposits.
  - 3. Mine development work.
  - 4. Different types of equipment used in working ore deposits.
- 37. Переведите в косвенную речь. Начните предложения словами: He (she) said/asked/told them/wanted to know:
  - 1. "I love you."
  - 2. "I can swim."
  - 3. "I don't want to go."
  - 4. "We'll be late."
  - 5. "I didn't recognize you."
  - 6. "Where have you been?"
  - 7. "Did you see him yesterday?"
  - 8. "Was your operation successful?"
  - 9. "When does the train arrive?"
  - 10. "Who did you see there?"

### 38. Повторите правило согласования времен и мереведите на виглийский:

- 1. Преподаватель попросил меня дать определение геологии как науки.
- Он спросил меня, какие основные методы добычи полезных ископаемых я знаю.
  - 3. Он сказал мне, что не знает значения слова infrastructure.
- 4. Профессор рассказал нам о том, как живут и учатся студенты-геологи в Англии.
- Он спросил меня, могу ли я рассказать по-английски, что случилось со мной утром.
- Она спросила меня, что я думаю об этой книге и понравилась ли она мне.
  - 7. Он позвонил и сказал, что приедет на следующий день.
- 8. Председательствующий (The Chairman) попросил меня суммировать мнения, высказанные участниками конференции.
  - 9. Он спросил меня, где я работал, прежде чем поступил в институт.
  - 10. Они объяснили нам, как пройти к музею и где купить билеты.

В

39. Прочитайте текст В и скажите, о чем он.

### TEKCT B

### Mining and the Environment

It should be stressed that effects of mining on the environment are twofold: firstly, there are direct effects arising from mining as a physical activity, which include disturbances of the land surface and accumulation of waste. Secondly, there are indirect destructive effects resulting from treatment of mineral products, such as coal burning, ore processing, smelting and other metallurgical processes. These frequently result in contamination of soil and ground water, pollution of the atmosphere and an adverse effect on vegetation and wildlife. Mining, especially open-pit mining, deforms the surface of the land and creates a large amount of waste materials which contain hazardous substances that pollute water and soil. Water from mining and concentration operations may contaminate the subsoil and rivers into which it flows. Most serious of all are gases produced by smelting, which may not only contaminate the air in the region of the smelter, but affect lakes and vegetation hundreds of miles away through the creation of acid rain.

There is one more point which affects the environment. It concerns the transport of coal representing one component of the complete coal cycle — from exploration and extraction of the fuel, through refining and processing storage and finally its conversion to an end-use product for consumers. Coal transportation is executed by train, truck (lorry), water (on rivers, canals, lakes, etc.) and slurry pipeline or conveyer belt. Environmental impacts of coal transport occur during loading or unloading. For example, rail transport and trucks cause damage to buildings, highways and other places.

Accidents are associated with all forms of transport. Besides, the transport of coal in all its forms involves dust, even though special measures are increasingly taken. Emission of coal particulate and other air pollutants occur during loading, unloading and during coal movement.

At the same time, research and development have provided greatly improved engineering and biological methods of land reclamation. It is necessary to say that land reclamation has emerged as a method of controlling the negative after-effects of extracting coal and other minerals. Land reclamation covers the problem of landscape redevelopment and the restoration of its productivity, ecological integrity, and economic and aesthetic value. The economic uses of reclaimed land depend on natural and socioeconomic factors of the locality. They may be orchards, meadows, parks, swimming pools, etc.

In recent years many industrial countries have developed and adopted laws, national programmes and specific policies for environmental protection. The basis of most laws applicable to the mining industry and its effect on land is to control land management,

protect resources and regulate land reclamation and landscape retraction. The principal impact of pollution regulations on the mining industry arises from regulations on emissions of CO<sub>2</sub> and other air pollutants from copper, lead and zinc smelters.

- 40. а) В каждом абзяце текста В найдите предложение, выражающее его основную мысль. Озаглавьте каждый абзац.
- б) Кратко передайте содержание текста В, используя следующие разговор-вые формулы:

The subject of the text is ...; The text deals with ...; It is pointed out that ...; It should be stressed that ...

- 41. Составьте 10 вопросов разного типа и тексту В и предлежите запиши товарищам дать на них ответы.
- 42. Обобщите информацию, водученную вами из текстов А и В. Напишите краткий реферат для реферативного журнала.
  - 43. а) Прочитайте следующее объявление о предстоящей конференции.

### Слова для понимения техста:

implication — вовлечение, причастность appropriate — подходящий, соответствующий legislation — законодательство workshop — секция, семинар issue — вопрос, проблема agenda — повестка дня

Leaders from the international mining, regulatory and environmental communities will meet in October to discuss the most crucial environmental issues facing the mining industry.

Sponsored by Mining Journal LTD and Mining World News, the First International Conference on Mining Environmental Management will focus on mining-oriented environmental legislation, the financial implications, the available technological solutions and management control systems.

The three-day meeting will be held at R's Conference Hall starting with a reception on Sunday evening. The event will comprise three parts: a central conference, plus parallel workshop sessions and an exhibition.

The main Conference will be broken into six halfday sessions which will contain only four or five papers in each session. These 20-minute papers will focus on subjects which are appropriate for executive debate. Each session will end with a 40-minute discussion on the topic.

The six session topics will be: The differing perspectives of the mining industry/environmentalists and developed/developing countries; Cont-



The International Conference on Mining Environmental Management

Miners, environmentalists and regulators
will meet to discuss critical
mining environmental issues

rasting international regulations and standards; Management practices and legal obligations; The role of government; Financial implications of a greener world.

The two-hour Workshops will occur on the morning of each day, being scheduled for completion by the start of the main conference proceedings. Papers will be 20 minutes each (to include time for questions after each presentation), with the workshops being divided into three sections; Air/Water Issues, Land Issues, and General Issues. The six papers in each workshop will be devoted to case studies and technical presentations. Consideration is also being given to Poster Displays of relevant technical work.

The Exhibition will offer equipment manufacturers and consultants the opportunity to present their products to the international industry.

Details of papers, speakers and exhibitors will be advised as soon as possible.

For further details please contract: Mining Journal Ltd, 60 Worship Street, London, U.K. Telephone:

Fax: ....

б) Скажите, какие проблемы будут рассматриваться на конференции, кто будет принимать участие в работе конференции, каков регламент конференции. Что вы думаете о значении таких конференций?

Какие доклады, по вашему мнению, следовало бы включить в новестку дня таких конференций?

44. Вы прочли объявление в научном журнале о проведении конференции. Выберите интересующую вас тему и напишите тезисы доклада.

# Russian clean coal summit

The Russian Clean Coal Summit is going to be held in Moscow from 19 to 23 May 199...

The main topics of this meeting are:

# ☑ Geo-political problems of coal production and attilisation

- place of coal in energy production balance
- coal as source of industry
- complex coal process

### Modern technologies and ecological aspects of coal process

- Efficient and Safe Underground Coal Mining Based on the Latest Achievements in Geomechanics
- Coal preparation and handling
- Solid fuel combustion
- Emission control
- By-products from solid fuel utilisation
- Coking
- Gasification

# ☑ Specialists training for industry of ecologically clean coal processing

- models of specialists
- ecological education of specialists
- systems of additional education and improved qualification (permanent education)
- education in the field of ecological management

# ☑ International business co-operation (business symposium)

- Participation of European industry in the development of Russian clean coal technology projects
- Co-financing Russian projects by the world's first class funding sources

Ваш доклад включен в программу конференции. Вы получили приглашение участвовать в конференции. Подготовьте выступление. Желяем успеха!

### UNIT 10 Economics and Mining

A. Texem A. Some Concepts of Economics

Б. Текст Б. Mineral Markets

B. Texcm B. US Coal Industry Today

Кроссворд (Crossword)

### Δ

### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

### 1. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

[5:] — more, to ward, in form, re source, organize

[o] — wants, be cause, cost, water, model

[ə:] — 'service, con'cern, earth, al'ternative, re'fer

[tf] - 'mixture, choice, a'chieve, 'natural, which

[f] - 'social, 'crucial, e'fficiency, fi'nancial

[jan] — re'cession, ex'traction, pro'tection, pro'fessional, insti'tution, 'national, ad'dition, satis'faction

[w] - what, 'whether, with, which, while

### 6) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова и запомиите их произношение:

scarce [skeas], scarcity ['skeasiti], society [sa'saiati], require [ri-'kwaia], resource [ri'so:s], crucial ['kru:fial], environment [in-'vaiaranment], entrepreneur [.ontrapra'na:], financial [fai'nænfal], justice ['d3Astis], opportunity [.opa'tju:nti]

2. Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслух и постарайтесь запомнить их.

**ability** [э'biliti] *п* способность, умение

allocate ['mloken] и размещать, распределять, назначать (to); allocation [mlo'kelfn] п размещение, распределение, назначение, ассигнование

своісе [tʃɔis] и выбор, отбор, альтернатива; to make ~ выбирать, отбирать (что-л.), сделять выбор совітові [kənˈfrʌnt] и столкнуться с трудностями, предрассудками

совяще [kən'sju:m] v потреблять, расходовать; совящег [kən'sju:mə] n потребитель; ~ goods потребительские товары; consumption n потребление, технический расход (масла, воздуха, пара и т.д.); затраты энергии

cost [kɔst] п цена, стоимость; р/ расходы, издержки; ~ of production издержки производства; саріtа! ~ капитальные затраты; оррогишіту ~ дополнительные издержки

- demand [di'mo:nd] п требование, запрос, потребность; экономический спрос; to be in great ~ быть в большом спросе, требоваться; syn to require
- deposit [di'pozit] n эд. депозит; bank ~ банковский вклад
- employ [Im'plot] v применять, использовать; syn use, utilize, apply; предоставлять (работу); employment n служба, занятие, применение, использование; ant unemployment
- enable [In'eibl] v давать возможность или право что-л. сделать; облегчать
- enterprise ['entəpraiz] и предприятие, предпринимательство entrepreaeur [.ontrəprə'nə:] и антрепренёр, предприниматель, владелец предприятия
- evaluate {1'væljuen} и оценивать, устанавливать стоимость; evaluation и оценка, определение цены, стоимости
- goods [gudz] n pl товар, товары; consumer ~ потребительские товары
- рау [реі] n плата, выплата, уплата, заработная плата;  $\nu$  (paid)

- уплачивать, оплачивать (работу, счет); ~ back оплачивать; ~ for оплачивать; ~ in вносить на текущий счет; ~ out выплачивать; payable ['peiəbi] a подлежащий оплате, доходный, выгодный; payment ['peiment] n уплата, платеж, плата; payout ['pei'aut] n выплата
- scarce [sksэs] а недостаточный, скудный; scarcity ['sksэsпі] п недостаток, нехватка (of); дефицит, редкость
- secure [si kjuə] v охранять, гарантировать, обеспечивать, страховать, обеспечивать безопасность; security [si kjuənti] n безопасность, надежность, охрана, гарантия; securities ценные бумаги
- supply (sə'plai) п экономическое предложение; р! запас, припасы, продовольствие, ресурсы, поставка
- trade [treid] *n* ремесло, профессия, торговля; *v* торговать (in чем-л., with с кем-л.); off сбывать, обменивать; trade-off *n* компромисс, альтернатива, выбор, сделка
- Определите, какой частью речи являются следующие слова. Переведите их:

allocate — allocation limit — limitation — limited — unlimited act — active — activity able — ability stable — stability secure — security employ — employment — unemployment value — valuable evaluate — evaluation scarce — scarcity consider — consideration — considerable — inconsiderable produce — producer — product — production — productive — productivity consume — consumable — consumer — consumption

- 4. Переведите предложения, обращая внимание на перевод существительных с суффиксом -ity:
- 1. All economies face scarcity, and all must decide how to allocate scarce resources and distribute goods and services, all face problems of inflation, unemployment, and unsatisfactory rates of growth.

- 2. The production *ability* shows the maximum possible amount of specified goods or services that can be produced by a particular economy.
- 3. One of society's primary economic goals is price stability when the overall level of prices for goods and services remains relatively constant.
  - 4. Financial security is one of socio-economic goals.
  - 5. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов. Переведите их:

scarce means of production alternative use of resources opportunity cost price stability financial security entrepreneurial ability individual consumer to make choice to produce an output of goods and services to use resources efficiently

to be concerned with scarcity

scarcity of resources
economic activity
four primary economic goals
full employment
output of goods
bank deposit
standard of living
to examine and evaluate economic
problems
to include land, labour, capital and
entrepreneurial ability

to operate on two levels — macroeconomics and microeconomics

6. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корпей с корпями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

limited resources; the problem of scarcity; three fundamental economic questions; material well-being; alternative use of resources; price stability; social and political environment; financial security; extraction of minerals; passive resources; national output; bank deposit; inflation and recession; individual consumer; business firm; economic choices; standard of living; to organize and coordinate economic activity; to produce goods and services; to examine and evaluate economic problems; to operate on two levels; to use resources efficiently

7. Прочитайте текст A и назовите основные экономические системы, перечисленные в нем. Скажите, что понимается под термином «экономика».

### **TEKCT A**

### Some Concepts of Economics

Economics is the allocation of the scarce means of production toward the satisfaction of human wants. The basic principle of economics is scarcity, which means that we cannot ever have all we want of every goods and service. It means that our demands for goods and services are unlimited, while resources on earth are limited. Without the problem of scarcity, there would be no need for the subject of economics.

Societies need a system to organize and coordinate economic activities. Every economic system — whether free-market, government-controlled or mixed — must answer the three fundamental economic questions:

- 1. What goods and services will be produced?
- 2. How will they be produced?
- 3. For whom will they be produced?

These are three principal types of economic systems, but modern economies are a mixture. Because scarcity does¹ confront us, the answers are crucial to our material well-being and to our social and political environment.

In theory, scarce resources can be allocated among alternative users without the employment of markets and prices. This is the so-called command economy or centrally-directed economy in which the government would decide what would be produced, how it would be produced, and for whom it would be produced.

In free-market economies all decisions about resource allocation are made by households and businesses interacting in markets free of any sort of government intervention. Individuals in market economies pursue their own interests. But there are no completely free-market economies, all real governments affect decisions about resources allocation in many ways and for many reasons.

All modern economies are mixed — intermediate between the command and free-market extremities. In mixed economies, both government decisions and market forces affect the allocation of resources.

It should be noted that there are four primary economic goals that a society aims to achieve: efficiency, price stability, full employment and growth. In addition, there are socio-economic goals which include environment protection, financial security, equity, justice and economic freedom.

Economic resources are often referred to as "the means of production" to produce an output of goods and services. These include land, labour, capital and entrepreneurial ability.

Land. All natural resources including fields, forests, mineral deposits, the sea, water as well as the ground in which these resources are found. Land is used not only for the extraction of minerals but for farming as well.

Labour. All human resources including manual, clerical,<sup>3</sup> technical, professional and managerial<sup>4</sup> labour.

Capital. The physical means of production including factories, office buildings, tools and equipment. Alternatively: financial capital.

Entrepreneurial ability. The entrepreneur sets up a business, risks his or her own money, gets or loses the profits.

We may consider land, labour and capital passive resources which are combined by the entrepreneur to produce goods and services. A successful undertaking is rewarded by profit, an unsuccessful one is penalized by loss.

Economics operates on two levels, the macrolevel and the microlevel.

Macroeconomics deals with national output, employment, the money supply, bank deposits, and government spending, and how we can deal with inflation and recession.

Microeconomics operates on the level of the individual business firm, as well as that of the individual consumer.

And so what exactly is economics? Basically, economics is a set of tools that enables us to use our resources efficiently. The end result is the highest possible standard of living.

#### пояснения к тексту

<sup>1</sup>Глагол to do может употребляться для усиления значения действия, выраженного смысловым глаголом в утвердительной форме. При переводе сказуемого перед ним добавляется слово действительно, фактически или на самом деле.

Economics does face many important problems.

Экономика действительно сталкивается со многими важными проблемами.

<sup>2</sup>equity — справедливость, беспристрастность

<sup>3</sup>clerical — канцелярский (прилагательное от clerk — клерк, служащий)

**\*managerial** — управленческий, административный

### УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

- 8. Укажите, какие предложения соответствуют содержанию текста. Подтвердите свои ответы фактами из текста.
- 1. It should be noted that the demands for goods and services are limited.

- 2. Every economic system must answer three fundamental economic questions.
  - 3. Socio-economic goals include full employment and growth.
- 4. As a rule, land, labour and capital are considered active resources and are not mentioned in the text.
- 5. The text gives some information on macroeconomics as well as on microeconomics.
- 6. It is common to speak of only the three principal types of economic systems - market, centrally-directed and mixed economies.
  - 7. All modern economies are free-market.
- 8. Scarce resources can be allocated among users without markets.
- 9. Вы прослушали лекцию о некоторых основных принципах экономической системы. В конце лекции профессор решил побеседовать с группой. Ответьте на его вопросы. Используйте выражения: Ін ту орініон. І think. І suppose. In fact, As is known.
- 1. Why is scarcity considered to be the basic principle of economics?
- 2. Can you name the main types of economic systems and explain how they differ?
  - 3. Why are modern economies a mixture?
- 4. What are the fundamental economic questions and what does each of the questions mean?
  - 5. Can you remember the definition of economics? What is it?
  - 6. Is efficiency the only economic goal?
  - 7. What is meant by economic resources?
- 8. You know that economics operates on two levels. What are these levels called and what do they deal with?
  - 9. What definitions can you give to?

### 10. Найдите в правой колонке определения к следующим словам:

- consumption 1. a) Limited resources for production relative to the wants for goods and services. 2. inflation b) A place where potential sellers of a good or services make contact with potential buyers. 3.
  - c) The use of resources to meet market current needs and desires.
- 4. saving d) A general increase in the level of 5.
  - scarcity e) Income that is not spent.

- 11. Найдите в тексте А и переведите предложения, в которых употребляются: 1) сложноподчиненные предложения (дополнительные, определительные, обстоятельственные с союзами и без союзов); 2) причастные обороты; 3) глаголы-сказуемые в страдательном залоге.
  - 12. Закончите предложения подходящими по смыслу словами из текста.
- 1. Generally speaking, the most basic problem economics is concerned with is .... It means that ....
- 2. The three fundamental economic questions every economic system must answer are ....
- 3. At the same time it is necessary to take into account the main types of economic systems. They are ....
- 4. It should be stressed that there are four primary economic goals that a society aims to achieve. They are ....
- 5. Economic resources are means of producing an output of goods and services. They include ....
  - 6. Economics operates on two levels, ... and ... .
- 7. In free-market economies all decisions about resource allocation are made by ....
- 13. а) Познакомьтесь со схемой и назовите по-русски три основные проблемы, которые должна решать каждая экономическая система.

### What Basic Questions Must Every Economic System Resolve?

### WHAT to produce

The economic system must decide what goods and services to produce with its land, labour, and capital

## HOW to produce

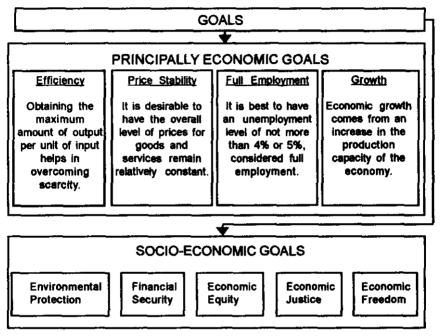
The economic system must decide how to produce each good or service — determining what mix of land, labour, and capital to use in production and what production methods to employ

## FOR WHOM to produce

The economic system must decide which members of society will receive how much of the goods and services produced — the process of allocating income

- б) Каждая из приведенных ниже ситуаций требует решения одного из трех основных вопросов экономики. Скажите, какой экономический вопрос решается в каждой ситуации.
- 1. The Parliament debates how much money to allocate to education programs and space projects.
- 2. Management at a major machine-building plant decides to modernize technology.

- 3. The government debates the issue of increasing welfare payments and programs.
- 14. а) Познакомьтесь с приведенией инже схемой в назовите четыре экономические цели, которых стремится достичь любое общество. В чем суть каждой цели?



- б) Каждая из приведенных пиже ситуаций направлена на достижение одной из указанных в схеме целей. Скажите, какая цель подразуменяется в каждом случае.
  - 1. The Government announced plans to control price inflation.
- 2. Labour unions are concerned about the increased use of robots in manufacturing.
- 3. The use of computers made the preparation of this study guide easier.
- 4. The U.S. has a higher standard of living today than 20 years ago.
- 15. Составьте список основных экономических терминов, встречающихся в тексте A, с их русскими соответствиями. Сверьте ваш список со списками ваших товарищей. Расскажите об основных принцинах, на которых базируется экономика, о типах экономических систем, основных экономических и со-правыно-экономических пелях всякого общества. Используйте активную лексику текста A.

Б

### ПРЕДТЕКСТОВЫЕ УПРАЖНЕНИЯ

### 16. а) Прочитайте вслух следующие слова:

[a:] - 'market, 'faster, large, de'mand, re'garded

[A] — some, thus, a'mong, 'others, 'sulphur ('sulfur), 'number, in'dustrial, one, fluctu'ation

[9] — par'ticular, 'instance, 'structural, ma'terial, pur'sue, sup'ply, con'sumer

[au] - a'bout, now, a'mount, 'household, how'ever

[ou] - own, most, low, 'process, 'over, know, 'follow, 'only

[22] - where, 'various, their, 'therefore, scarce

[d3] — stage, geo'graphic, geo'logic, 'knowledge, 'generally, 'project, 'energy, e'merge

[ks] — mixed, ex'tremity, 'fixing, 'export, ex'pensive, ex'tent, 'exercise, explo'ration, ex'perience

[gz] — e'xactly, e'xist, e'xample, e'xistence

### б) Прочитайте следующие слова и запомните их произношение:

analysis [ə'næləsis], competitive [kəm'petitiv], differentiate [difə'renfieit], constitute ['kɔnstitju:t], household ['haushould], imply [im'plai], process ['prouses], sulfur ['sʌlfə], sulfureous ['sʌlfəs], substantial [səb'stænfəl], monopoly [mə'nəpəli], pursue [pə'sju:]

### в) Прочитайте названия следующих минералов, запомните их произношение:

copper ['kopo], lead [led], zinc [ztŋk], nickel ['nɪkl], manganese [.mæŋgə'ni:z], cobalt ['koubo:lt]

 Прочитайте следующие слова и сочетания слов 1-2 раза про себя, затем вслуж и постарайтесь запоминть их:

авяние [ə'sju:m] и предполагать, допускать; assumption [ə'sʌmpʃən] и предположение, допущение commit [kə'mit] и поручать, вверять

commodity [kə'mɔditi] п предмет потребления; товар; зум goods compete [kəm'pi:t] v конкурировать (with с кем-л., for из-за чего-л., ради чего-л.); competition [.kɔmpɪ'tiʃn] п соревнова-

ние, конкуренция, конкурс; competitive [kəm petitiv] а конкурирующий, конкурентоспособный

солбие [kən'fain] v (to) ограничивать, придерживаться (чего-л.) солбоги [kən'fɔ:m] v сообразовываться), согласовываться (to с), соответствовать (to чему-л.), приспосабливаться, подчиняться (правилам)

deplete (di'pli:t) и истощать, исчерпывать; depletion [di'pli:fən] и истощение, исчерпывание (запасое)

differentiate [.difə'ronjien] у различать(ся), отличаться, дифференцировать(ся), видоизменяться

emerge [I'mə:dʒ] v появляться, возникать (о вопросе); emergence [I'mə:dʒəns] n выход, появление

household ['haushould] n домаш-

imply [Im'plat] v заключать в себе, значить, подразумевать, предполагать

income ['inkəm] n доход, поступление

participate [pc:/tmpen] v участвовать (in); syn to take part (in); participation [pc:,tsi'peifən] n участие, соучастие

ригвие (pə'sju:) v преследовать (цель, интерес); проводить политику

### 18. Переведите существительные с суффиксом -er, образованные от глаголов:

to buy

— buyer

to consume

consumer

to sell

— seller

to supply

supplier manufacturer

to manufacture —

trader

to explore

explorer

### 19. Переведите словосочетания с приставкой им-:

unacceptable increase in cost undeveloped mineral deposit unlimited raw material unreal project unchanged policy unknown resources unprotected environment unloaded coal

### 26. Прочитайте следующие сочетания слов и переведите их:

scarce resources
resource allocation
market participation of
producers and consumers
the possibility of price fixing
the emergence of international

mining companies to determine prices

to be replaced by petroleum products

to influence the production of minerals

to exercise considerable influence of international trade companies free-market economy
mixed economies
free competition
mineral commodities
nonfuel mineral resources
to interact in markets
the development of seabed minerals
to be regarded as world markets
to determine the structure of any
particular market

to be confined to determining the number, size and market position of the buyers and sellers

to imply competition

21. Определите значения выделенных слов по сходству их корней с корнями соответствующих слов в русском языке:

command economy; centrally-directed economy; resource allocation; mixed economies; mineral market; several stages of production; various types of petroleum products; international trade; oil-exporting countries; the structure of any particular market; structural analysis; communication and competition between producers and consumers; geographic conditions; the sum of all factors; market position; economically efficient price; price fixing; industrial minerals; business cycle; technological advances; to play the central role; to pursue one's own interests; to effect resources allocation

22. Прочитайте текст Б и расскажите, каковы особенности рыночной торговля минералами. Чем определяется структура таких рынков и какие минералы доминируют в мировой торговле?

### ТЕКСТ Б

### Mineral Markets

Market is a place where buyers and sellers of a given commodity meet to determine price. Mineral markets are material goods markets, and many are regarded as world markets.

Strictly speaking, markets for any particular mineral exist at several stages of production and for several levels of quality. The petroleum market, for example, is divided into:

- a market for light petroleum
- a market for heavy petroleum
- a market for low-sulfur petroleum, etc.

The importance of various types of products in international trade, however, varies continuously. Now that the oil-exporting countries are increasingly building up their own processing facilities, for instance, crude oil is less important in international trade and is being replaced by petroleum products.

Supply and demand determine the structure of any particular market. A structural analysis must thus consider the number, geographic distribution, and market participation of producers and consumers as well as the communications and competition between them. The production of minerals is influenced by geologic conditions and therefore market analysis needs to be conducted by mineral economists with good geologic inside knowledge.

The form of market is defined by the extent of free competition. It constitutes the sum of all factors influencing

competition and hence pricing. Empirical investigations on market structure are usually confined to determining the number, size and market position of the buyers and sellers. It is assumed that a large number of producers and consumers implies competition resulting in an economically efficient price: a small number, imperfect competition, where the price can be influenced; and one single producer or consumer, the absence of competition and the possibility of price fixing.

World trade in mineral commodities is dominated by petroleum, natural gas, coal, metals and some industrial minerals. There is, also, a substantial amount of trade in copper, lead and zinc concentrates.

World markets for minerals are generally quite competitive and most metal prices are subject to a high degree of fluctuation over the business cycle.

As for nonfuel mineral resources it should be stressed that over the past half-century continuous exploration aided by technological advances has increased reserves of most nonfuel minerals faster than they have been depleted. Besides, the development of seabed minerals could provide large supplies of copper, nickel, manganese, cobalt and other minerals for many generations to come. International trade in nonfuel minerals is important to hold down raw material costs in industrial countries.

### 23. Ответьте на следующие вопросы:

- 1. What is a market? What is a mineral market?
- 2. What is more profitable to sell: crude oil or oil products? Why?
  - 3. What determines the structure of any market?
  - 4. What is the role of structural analysis?
  - 5. Who is responsible for conducting mineral analysis?
  - 6. What is the role of competition in free-market economies?
  - 7. What is world trade in mineral commodities dominated by?
- 8. What do you know about nonfuel resources and seabed minerals and their role in international trade?
  - 9. Do you know what industrial minerals are?
  - 10. Do we have large reserves of nonfuel minerals?
  - 11. Why is international trade in nonfuel minerals important?

### 24. а) Назовите русские эквиваленты следующих слов и словосочетаний:

market commodities buyer (free) competition geologic conditions mineral economists

seller
mineral markets
stages of production
levels of quality
light/heavy/low-sulfur
petroleum
oil-exporting countries
processing facilities
crude oil
petroleum products
supply and demand
geographic distribution of
producers and consumers
to hold down raw material costs

empirical investigations
economically efficient
price
pricing
price fixing
natural gas
trade in copper, lead, etc
competitive markets
prices are subject to fluctuation
nonfuel mineral resources
technological advances
reserves are depleted
seabed minerals
for many generations to come

### Дополните ваш список экономических терминов к тексту А терминами из текста Б.

### в) Сделайте письменный перевод текста.

### 25. Найдите в левой колонке определения следующих терминов:

- Spending money on projects that will generate goods and services for future consumption.
- The existence of people who want to work, but are unable to find a iob.
- 3. Goods and services sold to another country.
- The use of labour, equipment, materials and energy to produce goods and services.
- 5. An arrangement between two or more countries.
- Goods and services bought from another country.
- A market economy with private and public sectors of economic enterprises.
- An economic system in which the basic questions of what how and for whom to produce are resolved primarily by governmental authority.
- An economic system in which resources are allocated by supply and demand mainly without government regulation of markets.

- a) Import
- b) Centrally-directed economy
- c) Mixed economy
- d) Investment
- e) Common market
- f) Free-market economy
- g) Unemployment
- h) Export
- i) Production

- 26. а) Просмотрите текст Б. Расположите нужкты приведенного ниже плана в соответствия с содержанием текста.
- 1. A characteristic feature of a market and especially of a mineral market.
  - 2. The function of structural analysis of markets.
  - 3. The problem of siting mineral resources in free-market economy.
  - 4. World trade in minerals (fuels, nonfuels, seabed minerals).
  - 5. Competition in free-market economy.
- Суммируйте содержание текста Б о рынке минералов, используя план и активную лексику.
- 27. а) Познакомьтесь с приведенной ниже схемой и назовите три основных типа экономических систем по-английски и по-русски и кратко расскажите, в чем суть каждой из вих.

### WHAT ARE THE PRINCIPAL TYPES OF ECONOMIC SYSTEMS?

MARKET ECONOMIES	CENTRALLY- DIRECTED	MIXED ECONOMIES	TRADITIONAL ECONOMIES
	ECONOMIES		
are economic systems in which the basic questions of what, how and for whom to produce are resolved by buyers and sellers interacting in markets.	are economic systems in which the basic questions of what, how and for whom to produce are resolved primarily by governmental authority.	are economic systems in which the basic questions of what, how and for whom to produce are resolved by a mixture of market forces with government direction and/or custom and tradition.	are economic systems in which the basic questions of what, how and for whom to produce are resolved primarily by custom and tradition.

- б) Определите, к каким экономическим системам относятся следующие утверждения:
- 1. Prices function to allocate resources when buyers and sellers interact.
- 2. Basic economic decisions depend on authority direction and tradition.
  - 3. Production is controlled by the government.
- 4. A system in which resources are allocated by supply and demand. Buyers and sellers interact.

- 5. A system where production through the economy is coordinated by the authority.
- 6. A system in which the basic questions of what, how and for whom to produce are decided by market forces and government.
- 28. Подготовьте краткое сообщение на тему «Что такое рыночная экономика».
- а) Прочитайте текст без словаря. Крятко суммируйте его содержание но-русски.
- Сделайте письменный перевод части текста, описывающей экономическую теорию Адама Смита.

#### Слова для понимания текста

coincidence	_	совпадение
gospel	_	проповедь
genesis	_	возникновение
solely	_	только, исключительно
guess	_	догадка, предположение
rival	_	конкурирующий
opulence	_	изобилие, богатство
bedrock	_	основной принцип

Today, most people have a hard time understanding what economists are talking about, but everyone knows what an economist is — a specialist in a recognized branch of academic knowledge. At the beginning of the nineteenth century the term was nothing like as specific. In England it was applied to anyone who approached problems by putting every argument and doctrine on whatever subject to the test of facts.

It was no coincidence that England gave birth to the first industrial revolution and what has since become known as the classical school of economics at the same time. The three most important gospels of this school are Adam Smith's Wealth of Nations (published in 1776), David Ricardo's Principles of Political Economy and Taxation (1817), and James Mill's Political Economy (1821).

Of these books, the most important is that by Adam Smith. It is the first great classic of economic theory and one of the first known attempts to describe economic life as a whole.

The genesis of The Wealth of Nations exactly mirrors the industrial revolution. Adam Smith was born in 1723, and was a

student at Glasgow University in Scotland from 1737 to 1740. Between 1764 and 1766 Smith toured Europe. While in France Smith met Voltaire and was greatly influenced by a group of philosophers. On his return from France, Adam Smith sat down to write his great book.

The first key question the book addresses is what is wealth? Real wealth is measured by the availability of consumable goods, and the labour, which produces them. An increase in wealth equals an increase in goods, and plenty means cheap goods. Anything that restricts the availability of goods reduces a nation's wealth. National wealth can only increase as trade does between and within nations. For trade to grow you need a market and how the market works is the core of Smith's book.

What makes markets such important creators of wealth is that they encourage the division of labour and specialisation.

An effective market economy — and the civilised society that it supports — depends on a network of co-operation that is neither planned nor directed by a political power. The operation of market forces, like the division of labour, brings great benefits to society and raises the standard of living, but this benefit cannot be planned. Buyers and sellers in a market are motivated almost solely by self-interest, but serve the public interest without having intended it. If the seller is the sole producer of a popular product, he will push its price up as high as the market will bear. But a high price will attract rival producers. Once their goods are available in the market, the price will naturally fall. Thus the market is a self-regulating mechanism guided not by a government, but by what Smith called "the invisible hand".

One of the bedrocks of Smith's philosophy is that no government or group of men is wise enough to do a better job at managing trade than a market which reflects the guesses and knowledge of millions. Smith didn't believe that governments would ever allow trade to be completely free and he wrote that the interests of national defence are always "more important than opulence". Under the final heading Smith was thinking of infrastructure projects like roads, bridges, canals and harbours which are expensive and often unprofitable to build but lead to an increase in trade and hence of national wealth.

Smith's achievement was immense: the science Smith discovered was called the modern economy.

30. Допо	динте вопросы и	попросите	вашего сок	урсника от	ветить і	ea enx.
1. Wha	ıt you	about	Adam	Smith	and	David
Ricardo? (sa		_		- ******		
	n Adam S	Smith	? (he hor	m)		
3 Wh	at university	Adam	Smith	, . to? (an)	١	
4 Wha	t Adam S	lmith	hetween	1764 an	, d 1766°	? (da)
5 Wh	o(m) Ad	am Smit	h w	hile in E	rance?	(maat)
5. Who	he	hv9 (in	N <u> </u>	mie m i	Tallee:	(meet)
7 Who	t he	down	to welte	am bia		- f
		down	to witte	on ms	returi	и пош
France? (si		A (	3 !41-			
8. WII	at full title	Adam	mitu	_ to his	DOOK?	(give)
9. Whe	n it	? (publis	h)			
10. Wha	t the key	question	of this be	ook? ( <i>be</i> )		
31. Pacci	кажите о жизни н	деятельно	сти Адама	Смета.		
		В				
22 Пес	читайте текст В	**** ****				
	четимие текст в гь реструктуризаці					
пооскодиное.	beerblaribane	an D Jinon	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	промения	MILOCI II	<b></b>
	Слова	для поних	пания текст	t:		
	capital-intensive	_	капиталое	мкий		
	to respond	_	отвечать,	реагироват	ГЬ	
	uncertainty	-	ненадежно		ренност	ГЬ
	externalities	_	внешние з			
	costs	_	расходы, п			
	competency utilities	_	правомочн pl предпри		OTDAUU,	250
	Afmirica		пользова		CIBERN	по
	drive	_	з∂. тенденц	RUJ		
	iaw	_	закон			
	loan	-	заем			
	to hamper		препятство	овать, мец	Іать	
	to encourage		поощрять			
	to assure	-	гарантиро	<b>зи</b> ТЬ		
		TEKC	ТВ			
	US (	Coal Indu	stry Toda	y		
			•	-		

New competition from international sources and more strict environmental regulations are the reasons the coal industry is facing a major restructuring. This competition means that cost increases cannot be passed through automatically. It means pressure on utilities to reduce power costs. It means unionised companies must become more capital-intensive to reduce labour costs that are out of control. It means pushing cost reductions through the entire supply chain: from power generation, to coal transportation, to coal production. This pressure of competition started in the early 1980s and has affected all aspects of the supply chain.

It should be noted that there are four fundamental reasons for the restructuring and consolidation of the coal industry. The first is the need to reduce costs. Combining companies can create greater efficiency by removing artificial barries and eliminating duplication. The market-place demands lower costs. Technological advances enable the industry to achieve lower costs.

The second reason for restructuring is the need for higher capitalization to respond to changing consumption patterns.

The third reason for restructuring the coal industry is the uncertainty surrounding the coal and electricity generating industries. These uncertainties encompass global climate change and externalities. But they also include expectations on electricity demand growth and natural gas price trends.

The fourth reason is the recognition that industries must focus on their core competencies to remain competitive.

So the request for lower costs, changed consumption patterns, uncertainty in future regulation and the return to core competencies are the driving factors behind the ongoing industry restructuring. The drive for efficiency is of utmost importance.

The US coal industry is no longer an 'island'. It competes with coal internationally and competes with other fuels, such as natural gas.

The drive to improve efficiency within the coal and electricity-generating industries has been slowed by government actions and organizations that have other perspectives. For example, inefficient unproductive mines remain in the coal industry if the owners of these mines recognize that they cannot survive in a competitive environment. They try to hide behind government protection, such as subsidized low-cost loans.

Union leaders insist on work rules, established in a previous era, that now hamper productivity improvements.

Thus, inefficient producers, labour leaders and government regulators have become the 'friction' that can stop forward progress until natural competitive forces overcome the friction and reinstate progress. The principal concern of US energy policy is no longer to assure a low-cost, stable supply of energy but rather to achieve the objective of limiting greenhouse gas emissions regardless of cost. SO<sub>2</sub> emissions will come down overtime as older plants are repowered.

The nation's current national energy policy discourages the use of coal for electricity generation while encouraging the use of other energy sources, such as natural gas.

- 33. а) Вышишите из текста специальные экономические термины и дайте их русские соответствия.
- б) Составьте десять общих и специальных вопросов по тексту, задляте их другим студентам и оцените правильность ответов.
  - в) Сделайте письменный перевод текста.
- Используя активную лексику текста В, кратко расскяжите о проблемах, стоящих перед угледобывающей промышленностью США.
- 35. Сделайте свободный веревод статьи на английский язык, используя активную лексику раздела и приведенные ниже слова:

превыщать to exceed reserves запасы (угля) быть достаточным, хватать to suffice to be of interest представлять интерес mutually profitable **ВЗЗИМОВЫГОДИЫЙ** to conduct (a policy) проводить (политику) safety безопасность conversion переход at the expence (of) за счет чего-л. переработка (угля) processing обогатительная фабрика dressing plant конкурентоспособность competitiveness

Доминирующим источником электроэнергии в мире является уголь — 44% электроэнергии получают путем сжигания угля. Запасы угля при нынешнем уровне его добычи в пять раз превышают запасы нефти и газа; их должно хватить на 200 лет.

Перечислим страны, в которых производство электроэнергии зависит от угля: Польша — 96%, Дания — 93%, Южная Африка — 90%, Австралия — 86%, Китай — 70%, Великобритания — 60%, Германия — 58% и США — 56%.

Российская угольная промышленность имеет весьма широкие и устойчивые научно-технические связи практически со всеми ведущими угледобывающими странами мира. Основные вопросы, которые стоят перед российской угольной промышленностью, следующие:

- Переход угольной промышленности от централизованного планирования к рыночной экономике.
- Охрана окружающей среды в связи с разработкой угольных месторождений и использованием угля.

- Новые технологии эффективного использования угля.
- Безопасность добычи угля.
- Мировая торговля углем.

Россия экспортирует уголь более чем в 20 стран мира. Основными импортерами российского угля являются Япония, Румыния, Италия, Болгария, Словакия. Следует отметить, что общий кризис производства в России коснулся и экспорта угля.

Для повыщения конкурентоспособности российских углей на мировом рынке компанией «Росуголь» разработана и реализуется программа повышения качества добываемых и перерабатываемых углей за счет развития и реконструкции обогатительных фабрик.

В 1996 году Всемирный банк предоставил России заем в размере \$25 млн. долларов на реструктуризацию угольной отрасли. Эти средства были направлены на выходные пособня работникам нерентабельных предприятий, которые необходимо было закрыть, на переобучение шактеров, на развитие социальной сферы шактерских городов и поселков. В 1996 году были закрыты более 20 особо убыточных шакт и один угольный разрез, а всего предстоит закрыть 90 угледобывающих предприятий. Сегодня речь идет о предоставлении второго займа в размере еще \$00 млн. долларов. Условием предоставления займов Всемирный банк считает демонополизацию отрасли. Учитывая острые социальные последствия реструктуризации, которые могут вызвать социальный взрыв, Всемирный банк предложил обеспечить информационную поддержку реформы.

36. Используя приведенные выше материалы и активную лексику раздела, расскажите о проблемах угольной отрасли в России. Каким образом, по вашему мнению, должна идти перестройка в этой отрасли?

## KPOCCBOPД (CROSSWORD)

В этом кроссворде зашифровано (по горизонтали и вертикали) более 30 экономических терминов и обычных слов. Сколько терминов вам удастся найти? Запишите их в тетрадь и назовите их русские соответствия.

P	R	I	С	E	T	R	Α	D	Е	R
S	Α	G	0	0	۵	s	Α	L	E	=
С	0	N	S	U	М	Р	T	ı	0	N
Α	D	В	υ	S	ı	N	Е	S	S	V
R	D	-	S	T	R	T	В	υ	T	Ε
С	Ε	C	0	N	0	М	-	С	S	S
1	M	O	N	E	Y	Α	М	Н	Ε	T
T	Α	R	G	Ε	Ť	R	Ρ	0	С	М
Y	Z	A	D	D	E	K	0	1	U	E
Ρ	D	Ε	F	Ī	N	E	R	С	R	N
۵	E	P	0	S	1	T	T	E	E	T

#### ПРИЛОЖЕНИЕ

#### КРАТКИЙ ФОНЕТИЧЕСКИЙ КУРС

#### АНГЛИЙСКИЙ АЛФАВИТ

Aa	[eɪ]	Nn	[en]
Bb	[bi:]	Oo	[ou]
Cc	[si:]	Pp	[pi:]
Dd	[di:]	Qq	[kju:]
Ee	{i:}	Rr	{a:}
Ff	[ef]	Ss	[es]
Gg	[dʒi:]	Tt	{ti:}
Нĥ	[eItʃ]	Uu	[ju:]
Ii	[al]	٧v	[vi:]
Jj	[dʒei]	Ww	['dʌblju:]
Kk	[kel]	Хx	[eks]
Li	[el]	Yy	[wai]
Mm	[em]	Zz	[zed]

#### ТРАНСКРИПЦИЯ

В английском алфавите количество звуков (44) превышает количество букв в алфавите (26). Для того чтобы пользоваться англорусским словарем, нужно усвоить знаки международной фонетической транскрипции, каждый из которых передает только один звук.

Ниже английские звуки передаются русскими буквами, а также приводятся примеры русских слов, в которых ударные или безударные гласные близки по звучанию соответствующим английским звукам. Знак «двоеточие (:)» после гласной обозначает ее долготу.

#### СОГЛАСНЫЕ

Английский звук	Близкий по произношению русский звук	Особенности произношения английского звука		
1	2	3		
[p]	[п] (твердый)	наличие придыхания		
[b]	[б] (твердый)	губной		
[m]	[м] (твердый)	губной		
[ŋ	[ф] (твердый)	произносится энергичнее		
[v]	[в] (твердый)	верхние зубы находятся на нижней губе		

1	2	3 .
[k]	[к] (твердый)	более энергичный, придыхание перед гласными
[0]	[г] (твердый)	более энергичный и отчетливый
[8]	[с] (твердый)	кончик языка у эльвеол (бугорки над верхними зубами)
[z]	[3] (твердый)	кончик языка у альвеол
[t]	[т] (твердый)	кончик языка упирается в альвеолы
[d]	[д] (твердый)	альвеолярный
[n]	[н] (твердый)	вльвеолярный
[1]	[л]	альвеолярный
[h]	_	похож на звук, который мы слышим, когда дышим на замерэшие руки, чтобы согреть их
ហ	[m]	кончик и передняя часть языка ближе подходят к альвеолам, средняя часть языка приподнята к твердому нёбу, зубы сближены
[r]	[p]	вибрация отсутствует, кончик языка при- ближается к передней части нёба (выше альвеол), как при произношении [ж]
{w}	_	произносится только одними губами, слегка округленными и продвинутыми вперед
[0]	_	задняя часть языка смыкается с мягким нёбом, произносится «в нос»
<b>(</b> 4)	[4]	всегда мягкий
<b>(i)</b>	[й] в майор	кончик и передняя часть языка прикаса- ются к альвеолам, средняя часть языка приподнята к твердому нёбу, голосовые связки не вибрируют
[e]	_	кончик языка между зубами, без голоса
[ð]	-	кончик языка между зубами, с голосом

#### ГЛАСНЫЕ

1	2	3
[1]	[и] в игла	Кончик языка — у основания нижних зубов. Средняя часть языка продвинута вперед, приподнята, звук краткий.
[e] `	[э] в эти, шесть	Кончик языка — у нижних зубов, губы слегка растянуты, нижнюю челюсть опускать не следует.

1	2	3
[æ]		Губы несколько растянуты, нижняя че- люсть опущена, кончик языка касается нижних зубов, средняя часть языка не- много выгибается вперед и кверху.
[0]	[0] в футбол	Губы слегка округлены, кончик языка оттянут от нижних зубов, лежит плоско.
[٨]	безударная о в словах Москва, на мосту	Язык отодвинут назад, губы слегка растянуты, расстояние между челюстями довольно большое.
<b>[ə]</b>	как второе о в словах голова, холодно	Всегда безударный и легко подверга- ется влиянию соседних звуков. Не дол- жен быть похожим ни на [а], ни на отчетливое [э]. Чтобы избежать оши- бок при его произношении, следует все усилия сосредоточить на ударном гласном.
[i:]	[и:] в <i>ива</i>	Кончик языка касается нижних зубов, масса языка продвинута вперед. Губы несколько растянуты.
[a:]	[a:] B ma-ak!	Кончик языка оттянут от нижних зубов, лежит плоско, губы нейтральны, рот открыт почти так, как для произнесения русского звука [о].
[ɔ:]	[0:] B no-opm	Органы речи расположены как при произнесении [a:], но губы значительно округлены и несколько выдвинуты вперед.
[u:]	{y:}	Губы сильно округлены, но гораздо меньше выдвинуты вперед, чем при произнесении русского [у]. Английский звук более долгий и напряженный.
[:e]	_	Тело языка приподнято, вся спинка языка лежит максимально плоско, губы напряжены и слегка растянуты, чуть обнажая зубы. Расстояние между челюстями небольшое.

#### дифтонги

Дифтонг — это сочетание двух гласных звуков, произносящихся слитно, как единый звук. Первый элемент этих звуков всегда артикулируется сильнее, чем второй.

[e1]	[эй]	шейка	[netm], [metn], [petn], [tfetn]
[aɪ]	[ай]	Байкал	[mai], [draiv]
[1C]	[ой]	бойня	[toi], [boil]
[au]	[ay]	пауза	[nau], [taun], [haus]
[ou]	[oy]	клоун	[nou], [sou], [koul]
[12]	[H <sub>a</sub> ]		[nɪə], [hɪə], [jɪə]
[uə]	[y <sup>4</sup> ]		[ʃuə], [puə], [tuə]
[ <b>£</b> 3]	[э <u>•</u> ]		[rea], [ri'pea], [a'fea], ['earial]
[auə]	[ay*]	-	(tauə), [pauə], [sauə]
[arə]	[айа]		[faiə], [haiə], [laiəbl], [in'taiə]

#### ПРАВИЛА ЧТЕНИЯ

Чтение гласных букв зависит от слога, в котором они находятся. В открытом ударном слоге каждая гласная читается так, как она называется в алфавите. Открытым слогом называется слог, который оканчивается на гласную букву. Чаще всего конечная гласная е не читается, а гласная в корне находится в открытом слоге, если перед ней стоит одна согласная, например: date, like, take, cone. Закрытый — это слог, в котором после гласной идет одна или две согласных, например: map, add, act, bend, 'matter.

Произношение гласных и согласных зависит также от зву-кового окружения.

ПРАВИЛА	чтения	БУКВЫ <b>g</b>	[dʒi:]
---------	--------	----------------	--------

[d3] (перед е, і, у)	[9] (перед а, о, и, согласными, в конце слова)	gh не читается перед ; и в конце слова	gh = [1] ng = [ŋ]	Не читается перед п
1'	2	3	4	3
age agi'tation 'bridge 'damage 'energy 'fragile 'general 'giant	a'gree 'angle 'angular bag, lag 'gather 'gummer go good Исключення ([g]): get, give, gear, be'gin, 'target, to'gether и др.	bright height 'highly weigh though through brought taught	e 'nough 'roughly laugh tough bring strong thing 'welding	a'lign a'lignment de'sign gneiss sign strength

## правила чтения буквы c [si:]

	c		•	ъ
[s] перед е, i, у	[k] перед а, о, и, перед согл., на конце слова	[]] неред суффиксами -iai, -ious, -ie, -ia	ប្រ (tch)	[k] в словах латинского и греческого происхожд.
a'cidity ad'vancing ad'vice ap'pliance cease cen'trifugal de'cide de'cision e'mergency hence re'ceive	'accident 'accuracy a 'cidic ac 'tivity af 'fect at 'tack back 'basic be 'come caisson con 'clude	ocean ap 'preciate as 'sociate ef 'ficiency 'facies 'precious 'special suf 'ficient 'social  Исключение: glacial ['gleIsjəl]	pitch reach a'chieve re'search ap'proach ch, sch=[j] ma'chine 'schistose	'technical tech'nique me'chanical 'architecture school scheme 'chemistry 'character

## правила чтения буквы x [eks]

[ks] в конце слов, перед согласной и неударной гласной	[gz]	[ks]	[2]
	перед ударной	перед	в начаже слова
	гласной	-ible, -ion, -ious	перед гласной
ex cess 'exercise fix, mix ex change 'execute 'flaxy ex 'plain	e'xist e'xample e'xact e'xamine e'xistence ex'haust	'flexion 'anxious 'anxiously 'flexible ,flexi'bility	'xenon xeno'morphic xeno'phobia 'xylene 'xyloid

## непроизносимые согласные

некоторых начале начале	gn = [n] в некоторых словах (перед и на конце слов)	alf = [0:f] alm = [0:m] alk = [0:k]	t HE UNTACTOR B COUCTAHURX fien, sile, sten	b, п не читаются после т в конце слова; b— перед t
1	2	3	4	5
hour honest honestly honour honourable heir [so]	gnaw gnat gneiss [nais] gnome a'lignment de'signer	haif walk talk calm calf chalk	wrestle often listen fasten soften castle	plumb bomb dumb autumn column debt

wh = [h]	wh = [w]	wr = [r]
6	7	8
who	wheel	write
whom	when	wrap
whose	where	wrong
whole	why	wrist
wholly	which	wrench
1	what	wring
w немое в	white	wrinkle
two, answer	:	
		l

## правила чтения буквы а [ег]

[еі] в <i>открытом</i> слоге	(se) B Sakpatom Chore	<i>ar</i> = [a:]	ar + гласн. — [sə]	в неударном полож. — [э], [1]	перед / + согласная — [э:]
1	2	3	4	5	6
age base basis cable caved change datum edu cation ele vation	ash 'alloy 'angle 'access 'acid 'planet valve 'fracture 'handle	arch arm a'larm 'carbon charge yard 'particle 'target	bare area 'various 'vary pre'pare com'pare 'careful  (Перед гг = [æ] barrel carry)	a bove ac cept ad dition a gree ap ply ca pacity en visage voltage giant	'alter call fall false in 'stall al 'ready salt talk [to:k] chalk [tjo:k]

после w в закрытом слоге — [э:], [э]	перед s + coin. или th, ft, nt, nd, nce, nch — [a:]	диграфы ai, ay — [e1]	сочетание air — [sэ]	диграфы au, aw — [э:]
7	8	9	10	11
wash watch was water want quarry [5:] quarter [5:] (Сочетание qua [kw5], [kw8] — e'quality, 'equal, 'quality, 'quantity)	basket blast branch vast pass bath plant e'xample glass dance	aim a'vailable claim clay drain gain 'mainway re'tain 'railway 'payment	air re'pair 'airless 'aircraft stairs af'fair 'chairman 'airport	au'thority ,auto'matic cause draw fault 'haulage hy'draulic law 'awful ap'plause be'cause

## правила чтения буквы е [i:]

[i:] в открытом ударн. слоге	[е] в закрытом ударн. слоге 2	er = [ə:] ear + согл. — [ə:]	<i>er</i> + гласн. = [1э]	в неударном положении [I], [ə]
'meter de'pletion pre'cede scheme these 'region 'recently scene 'equal com'pete  (Исключения: every ['evri] seven ['sevn])	ac cept as semble at tempt at tention benching com press con nect density depth em ploy entry gentle	con cern de termine dis perse e mergency in ternal earth mercury permanent re search pre serve	ad'here in'herent 'series se'vere here sphere era 'period ex'perience  (На конце слов [1ə] — clear, rear, shear. Исключения: bear [sə] wear [sə] there [бsə])	bucket .corres'pond de'cide de'fine e'merge e'mit 'endless en'rich pre'cise re'veal

ee, ea = [i:]	ea = [e]	eu, ew = [ju:]	ei, ey = [ci]
6	7	8	9
a gree beach cease con ceal de crease heap feeling freeze Исключение: break [e1]	breast dead death heading headway heavy in stead measure spread bread steadily leather pleasant	hew re'new few 'neutral knew news Newton  (ew = [u:] nocne r, ch: crew screw chew drew)	sur'vey sur'veyor vein weight they obey grey con'vey  MCKINOTENHIS: re'ceive [i:] ceiling seize con'ceive gneiss {at} height [at]

# ПРАВИЛА ЧТЕНИЯ БУКВ i [ai] AND y [wai]

[аг] в открытом ударном слоге	[1] в закрытом ударном слоге	[э:] в сочетаниях <i>ir, yr</i>	[аіэ] в сочетаниях <i>ir, yr</i> + гласн.	[al] перед id, nd (gh, gn не чит.)
į	2	3	4	5
mine my type final ap'ply sup'ply 'widely dyke idle in'cline 'limestone  Ho: give, live [1], ma'chine [i:]	bin width con'sist en'rich 'filling 'friction 'grizzly hinge 'influence pre'dict shift 'system 'middle	'circle 'circuit girder first dirty con'firm third thirsty birth en'circle	wire en tire en vironment iron re quire ac quire tyre tyrant de sire 'diagram 'diamond 'diary wiring	wind might bright right flight grind 'highly sign a'lign kind be'hind de'sign 'mildness

[al] в сочетаниях ie, уе в окончаниях	[I] в неударном положении	[i:] в сочетании <i>iе</i> в середине слов	[j] (буква у в начале слова перед гласными)
6	7	8	9
over'lie die rye tries ap'plied re'plies sup'plied reply fly	'conical 'empty 'energy 'gravity im'pact im'prove 'industry 'badly	field re'lief brief be'lieve a'chievement niece siege thief sieve piece  Ho: science [ala] diet [ala] so'ciety friend [e]	yard yield 'yellow you year yoke young 'yesterday yes

# правила чтения буквы o [ou]

[оц] в открытом ударном слоге	[э] в закрытом ударном слоге	[3:] B COUCTAHUSIX or, ore, oar, our, oor	[ə] в неударном положении	[э:] в сочетании <i>wor</i>	[u:], [u] (в некоторых случаях)
1	2	3	4	5	6
cone cope 'closely 'coking de 'note e 'rode ex 'posed 'mobile 'overcut	a cross block bottom cloth collar concrete inter lock loss	board coarse door horse more ex'plore floor 'order 'normal 'roaring source	'carbon com 'bine 'elevator 'method 'numerous 'obvious o'riginal 'seldom 'colour 'dangerous	word work world worse worst worm workless	move who whom whose lose prove wolf to do two

[u:], [u] (в диграфе оо)	[эі] в диграфах <i>оі</i> , <i>оу</i>	[оц] в диграфе <i>оа,</i> перед <i>ld</i>	[ou] в <i>ow</i> в конце слов	[au] в <i>ои, о</i> w в середине слов	[A] (o, ou nepog m, n, th, v)
7	8	9	10	11	12
boom roof room shoot tool tooth wood soon book shook took look look  Исключения: flood, blood {A}	a'void em'ploy joint 'moisture point spoil oil en'joy choice soil des'troy	coal goaf coating oak .over'coat gold told old Ho [5] nepeg nd: bond fond pond	blow follow grow know low show be'low narrow  Ho: how, now [au]	ac 'count boundary com'pound down tower founder mount outcrop powder power	couple cover double front govern shovel a 'mong country rough tough trouble

## правила чтения буквы и [ju:]

[ju:] в открытом ударном слоге	[u:] после букв <i>r</i> , <i>l</i> , <i>j</i> в открытом слоге	[л] в закрытом ударном слоге	[u] перед <i>l</i> , ss, sh, t, th	[э:] (ur + согд., ur в конце слова)
1	2	3	4	5
duty fuse _intro'duce con'sume _contri'bution 'nuclear 'numerous 're'use tube tubing uniform unit	con'clude ex'clude ex'trusion 'lubricate rule true blue ruby rude June July cruise	bulk bump buttock button cluster con'duct cutter dust bucket jumbo lustre number	bull pull push put puss truth full beautiful thankful sugar	burn burst oc'cur surface turn dis'turb curve hurt sur'vive murmur purpose

[juə] (ur + гласная, иа, ие)	[ә] в неударном положении	[ju:] в диграфах ие, иі	[kw] в сочетании qu	Не произносится
6	7	8	9	10
pure fuel manual visual cure during secure [ua]: cruel fluent sure ensurance	column simul'taneous supply sup'port sus'pend un'til minus difficult calcium datum suc'cess	due issue value pur'sue 'argue Tuesday pur'suit con'tinue sub'due 'virtue suitable genuine	quarry quartz quick quite quiet quarter quantity quality a 'cquire 'consequently e 'qui pment liquid	build guide league tongue guest guilty guard guess buy language distinguish

#### СПОСОБЫ СЛОВООБРАЗОВАНИЯ

#### **КОНВЕРСИЯ**

Конверсия — это характерный для английского языка спо-соб безаффиксального словообразования: глагол образуется от существительного или прилагательного или существительное от глагола без суффиксов или префиксов.

Прилагательное	Существительное	Глагол
round — круглый	<b>a rouad</b> — круг	to round — округлять, делать круглым
<b>dry</b> — сухой	а сит — вруб а mine — шахта, рудник	to dry — сушить to cut — подрубать to mine — производить гориме работы

# ОБРАЗОВАНИЕ СЛОВ В РЕЗУЛЬТАТЕ ИЗМЕНЕНИЯ МЕСТА УДАРЕНИЯ И ЧЕРЕДОВАНИЯ ГЛАСНЫХ И СОГЛАСНЫХ ЗВУКОВ

Существительное	Глагол
an increase ['inkri:s] увеличение produce ('prodjus] продукция export ['ekspo:t] экспорт use [ju:s] польза	tò increase [in'kri:s] увеличиваться to produce [prə'dju:s] производить to export [eks'pp:t] экспортировать to use [ju:z] использовать
Прилагательное	Существительное
long [lon] длинный strong [strong] сильный, крепкий	length [lene] длина, протяженность strength [strenge] сила, крепость

#### СУФФИКСЫ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНЫХ

Значение суффикса	Суффикс и его произношение	Пример	Перевод
1	2	3	4
а) Обозначает принадлежность к определенной группе людей или профессии, действующее лицо или орудие действия, национальность	-ician [Ifn] -ant [ent] -ent -ent -er [ent] -er [e] -er [e] -or [e] -ess [is] (HM.CyIII.X.p.) -ian [Ien] -ist [Ist]	academician assistant student secretary engineer miner constructor excavator actress Italian geologist	академик помощник студент секретарь инженер шахтер конструктор экскаватор актриса итальянец геолог
б) Обозначает определенные понятня, процессы, действия, науки, предметы, абсграктные понятия	-acy [əsi] -age [id3] -ance [əns] -ary [əri] -ery [əri] -dom [dəm] -hood [hud] -ic [ik] -ics -ing [ip] -ion [jən, ən]	accuracy democracy advantage distance presence science library discovery freedom childhood logic mechanics beginning weathering union region	точность демократия преимущество расстояние присутствие наука открытие свобода детство логика механика начало выветривание союз область

1	2	3	4
	-tion [ʃn] (-ation ['elʃn], -ition ['lʃn], -ution ['ju:ʃn]) -sion [ʃn, ʒn]	production education acquisition distribution conversion	производство образование приобретение распределение презращение
		conclusion explosion	заключение взрыв
	-ssion [fn]	discu <b>ssion</b>	обсуждение
	-ment [mant]	move <b>ment</b>	движение
	-ness [nis]	thickness	толщина, мощность
	-ology ['olədʒɪ]	techn <b>ology</b>	техника, технология
	-sure [39]	measure	мера, измерение
	-ture [tʃə]	lecture	лекция
	-lty (rti)	locality	размещение
	- <b>y</b> [1]	difficulty	трудность
	- <b>ship</b> [ʃîp]	friend <b>ship</b> schola <b>rship</b>	дружба стипендия

#### СУФФИКСЫ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНЫХ

Значение суффикса	Суффикс и его произношение	Пример	Перевод
1	2	3	4
а) Обозначает способность произвести действие или подвергнуться действию	-able (abl) (-ible [fbl]) -al [al], [l] -cial [fl] -ical [fkal]	profitable flexible legal social geological	прибыльный гибкий легальный общественный геологический
б) Обозначает присутствие качества (образуется от существительного)	-en [n, ən] -ant [ənt] (-ent [ənt]) -ar [ə] -ary [ən] -ate [nt] -ic [tk] -ile [an] -ive [xy]	golden abundant dependent regular primary adequate metallic scientific mobile comparative	золотой обильный зависимый регулярный первичный соответствующий металлический научный подвижный сравнительный

1	2	3	4
в) Выражает национальную принадлежность; неполную степень качества (образуется от прилагательного)	-ish [1/]	English reddish	английский красноватый
г) Выражает наличие качества (образуется от существительного)	-ful [ful]	useful	полезный
д) Обозначает отсутствие качества (образуется от существительного)	-less [lis]	use <b>less</b>	бесполезный
е) Выражает наличие качества (образуется от существительного)	- <b>ous</b> [əs]	dangerous famous	опасный знаменитый
ж) Обозначает качество (образуется от существительного)	-ly [li] (не смешивать с наречием)	friend <b>ly</b>	дружественный
з) Обозначает качество или подобие качеству, сходство (образуется от существительных)	-y [I] -like [laik]	sunn <b>y</b> child <b>like</b>	солнечный детский (подобный детскому)
и) Обозначает направление	-ern (ən) -ward [wəd]	east <b>ern</b> east <b>ward</b>	восточный направленный на восток

#### СУФФИКСЫ ЧИСЛИТЕЛЬНЫХ

Значение суффикса	Суффикс и его произношение	Пример	Перевод	
1	2	3	4	
а) Образуются числительные от 13 до 19 (имеют два ударения)	-teen [ti:n]	'four' <b>teen</b>	четырнадцать	
б) Образуются десятки (20 — 90)	-ty [tɪ]	'forty	сорок	
в) Образуются порядковые числительные	-th -(i)eth	the fourth the fiftleth	четвертый пятидесятый	
г) Выражает кратность	-fold [fould]	twofold manifold	двойной многократный	

## НАИБОЛЕЕ УПОТРЕБИТЕЛЬНЫЕ ПРЕФИКСЫ, ОБЩИЕ ДЛЯ РУССКОГО И АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКОВ

Префиксы английского языка	Префиксы русского языка	Значение
1	2	3
1. <b>de-</b> [dɪ] — deform	де- деформировать	лишение качества, освобождение от данного состояния; раз(с)-, обез(с)-
2. Inter- [Intə] — international	<i>интер-</i> интернациональный	между-, среди-, пере-
3. multi- [mʌltɪ] — multimillionaire, multifold	<i>мульти</i> - мультимиллионер, многократный	много, множество
4. <b>poly-</b> [pɔlɪ] — polytechnical polyatomic	поли- политехнический многоатомный	много, множество
5. <b>post-</b> [poust] — postscript, post-war	пост- постскриптум, послевоенный	после

1	2	3
6. re- [n] reconstruct	ре- реконструировать (перестроить, вновь построить)	повторное действие (вновь, снова, обратно; пере-, воз(с)-)
7. co- (con- [kən]) cooperation contact	со-, ко- кооперация, сотрудничество контакт, соединение	совместное действие; вместе с
compose con-, перед b, m, p — com-	состоять из чего-л.	
8. sub- [sab, sab] — subject, subsoil	суб-, под- субъект, подпочва	нахождение внизу, под чем-л., подчинение
9. super- ['sju:pə] — superintendent	супер- суперинтендант	нахождение наверху, над чем-л./кем-л., сверх, выше, над
10. ex- [iks, eks] — extract, extensive, ex-president	экс- экстракт (извлекать), экстенсивный, бывший президент	бывший
11. extra- ['ekstrə] — extraordinary	экстра-, сверх- экстраординарный	предельная степень качества (очень, крайне, чрезвычайно)

## ПРЕФИКСЫ ОТРИЦАТЕЛЬНОГО И ПРОТИВОПОЛОЖНОГО ЗНАЧЕНИЯ

Английский язык	Русский язык	Основа	Примеры
1	2	3	4
[un- [vii	He-	Прилагательное, причастие, наречие	necessary — unnecessary нужный — ненужный timbered — untimbered закрепленный — незакреп- ленный
	раз(с)-	Глагол	to load — unload грузить — разгружать

1	2	3	4
in- [m] (im- [m], il- [i], ir- [ir])	не- без(c)-	Существительное, прилагательное, наречие	ассигасу — іпассигасу точность — неточность frequent — іпfrequent частый — редкий possible — ітровів возможный — невозможный legal — illegal законный — незаконный respectively — іттеврестічеlу соответственно — безотно- сительно
dis- [dis]	не-	Существительное Прилагательное, наречие	advantage — disadvantage преимущество — недостаток satisfactory — dissatisfactory удовлетворительный — неудовлетворительный арргоvingly — disapprovingly одобрительно — неодобрительно
	pa3(c)- om-	Глагол	to charge — to discharge загружать — разгружать to agree — to disagree соглашаться — не соглашаться to appear — to disappear появляться — исчезать
<b>de-</b> [dI]	de- pa3(c)- be3(c)-	Существительное, глагол	formation — deformation формирование — деформация to construct — to destruct строить — разрушать
non- [non]	не- без-	Существительное, прилагательное	conductor — non-conductor проводник (тока) — не проводник (тока) сокіпд — под-сокіпд коксующийся — некоксующийся alcoholic — поп-аксоholic алкогольный — безалкогольный
anti- ['ænti] counter- [kauntə]	анти- контр- против(о)-	Существительное, прилагательное Существительное, прилагательное, глагол	anti-war — антивоенный anticline — антиклиналь; свод соunteract — противодействовать соunter-rail— контррельс counterweight — противовес counter-clockwise — против часовой стрелки

# ПРЕФИКСЫ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА, НЕ ИМЕЮЩИЕ СООТВЕТСТВИЙ В РУССКОМ ЯЗЫКЕ

Префиксы английского языка	Значение префикса	Примеры
1	2	3
a- (ə)	Наречия, предлоги, соответствующие русским в, к, y, ма и др.	
be- [bi]	1) кругом, вокруг (соответствует рус. о-); 2) в сочетании с сущ. и прил. образует глагол с соответствующим значением; 3) образует наречия, предлоги, союзы	маленький — уменьшать, умалять cloud — becloud
en- (In)	Образует глаголы от существительных и прилага- тельных	danger — endanger опасность — подвергать опасности rich — enrich богатый — обогащать
fore- [fo:]	Часто соответствует рус- скому пред-	foremost — передовой foresee — предвидеть foretell — предсказать
out- [aut]	Часто соответствует рус- скому пере- (иногда вне, за)	outside — снаружи outlive — пережить outcrop — выходить на поверхность
onet-	сверх, над, чрезмерно, <i>пере</i> -	overload — перегружать, чрез- мерно загружать overall — полный, общий
semi-	полу-, наполовину	semiautomatical — полуавтоматический semicircle — полукруг
under- [Andə]	ниже, под-, недостаточно (антоним — over)	underground — подземный, под- почвенный underlay — подстилать, залегать ниже

#### СВОДНЫЕ ТАБЛИЦЫ СПРЯЖЕНИЯ ГЛАГОЛОВ

## действительный залог

#### Формы глагола: to ask — asked — asking

Простое (Неопреде- ленное)	Длительное	Перфектное	Перфектно- длительное	
to ask	to be asking	to have asked	to have been asking	
1	2	3	4	
		PRESENT		
I ask	I am asking	I have asked	I have been asking	
He She asks	He She It asking	He She has asked	He She It has been asking	
We You They	We You They asking	We You They asked	You They	
Does he ask?	Yes, he is.	Has he asked? Yes, he has.	Has she been asking? Yes, she has.	
Do you ask?	Are you asking? Yes, I am.	Have you asked? No, I haven't.	Have they been asking? No, they haven't.	
He/she does not (doesn't) ask	He/she is not (isn't) asking	He/she hasn't asked	He/she hasn't been asking	
You do not (don't) ask	We aren't asking	We haven't	They haven't been asking	
		PAST	· - · · ·	
He She It We You asked	I He She asking It We You were	I He She It We You	I He She It had been asking We You	
Did he ask? Yes, he did.	They J asking  Was he asking?  Were they asking?	They Had he asked?	They  Had she been asking?	
He didn't ask	You weren't asking	He hada't asked	She hadn't been asking	

## Продолжение таблици

1	1 2		4	
		FUTURE		
I shall/will We shall/will We sask We be asking He She It will ask You They Shall I ask? Shall I ask? Will you ask? Will you be asking?		I shall/will We have asked	I shall/will have been asking	
		He She It will have asked You They	He She It will have been asking They	
		Shall I have asked?	Shall I have been asking?	
l shall/will not (shan't/won't)	I shan't/won't be asking	I shan't/won't have asked	I shan't/won't have been asking	
He will not (won't) ask Asking		He won't have asked	She won't have been asking	
	FUTU	RE-IN-THE-PAST		
l/we would/ should ask	I/we would/ should be asking	I/we would/ should have asked	I/we would/should have been asking	
He/she You They would she You They would be asking		He/she You have asked	He/ she You They  Would have beca asking	
Would/Should I ask? Would he ask? Would he be asking?		Would/Should I have asked? Would he have asking?	Would/Should I have been asking? Would she have been asked?	
He wouldn't be bave asking		He wouldn't	She wouldn't have been asking	

#### СТРАДАТЕЛЬНЫЙ ЗАЛОГ

# Образование: *to be* в соответствующем времени + III формаосновного глагола (причастие II)

	PRESENT		
Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	
аm, is, are + III форма глаголя	ат, is, are being + III форма глагола	have/has been + III форма глагола	
I am invited  He (she, it) is invited  We (you, they) are invited	I am being invited He (she, it) is being invited We (you, they) are being invited	I have been invited He (she, it) has been invited We (you, they) have been invited	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	PAST	,	
Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	
was, were + III форма глагола	was, were being + III форма глагола	had been + III форма глагола	
I (he, she, it) was invited We (you, they) were invited	I (he, she, it) was being invited We (you, they) were being invited	I (he, she, it) had been invited We (you, they) had been invited	
	FUTURE		
Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	
will (shall) be, will be + III форма глагола	Вместо отсутствующей	shall (will) have been + III форма глагола	
I (we) will (shall) be invited He (she, it, you, they) will be invited	формы употребляется Future Indefinite	I (we) will (shall) have been invited He (she, it, you, they will have been invited	

## СПИСОК НЕПРАВИЛЬНЫХ ГЛАГОЛОВ

Неопреде- ленная форма	Прошедшее время	Причастие прошедшего времени	Основные значения
1	2	3	4
be become begin bend	was/were became began	been become begun	быть, находиться становиться начинать сгибать
bind break bring	bent bound broke brought	bent bound broken brought	связывать ломать; разбивать приносить
build burn buy catch	built burnt bought caught	built burnt bought caught	строить жечь; гореть покупать схватить, поймать
choose cleave come cost	chose clove (cleft) came cost	chosen cloven (cleft) come cost	выбирать рассечь, трескаться приходить, приезжать стоить
cut deal dig do	cut dealt dug did	cut dealt dug done	резать иметь дело конать делать
draw drink drive	drew drank drove	drawn drunk driven	тянуть; выводить (заключение) пить приводить в движение,
eat fall fight find	ate fell fought found	eaten fallen fought found	вести машину есть, съесть падать бороться, сражаться
forget freeze get	forgot froze got	forgotten frozen got	находить забывать замерзать получать
give go grind grow	gave went ground grew	given gone ground grown	давать идти молоть, измельчать расти
hang have hear hold	hung (hanged) had heard held	hung (hanged) had heard held	висеть; повесить иметь слышать держать, проводить
keep know lay	kept knew laid	kept known laid	(конференцию) держать знать класть; положить

1	2	3	4
lead	led	led	руководить
leave	left	left	оставлять, покидат
lie	lay	lain	лежать
lose	lost	lost	терять
make	made	made	делать (руками), катотавливать
mean	meant	meant	подразумевать; означать
meet	met	met	встречать
pay	paid	paid	IUIATHTS
put	put	put	класть, положить
read	read	read	читать
rise	rose	risen	вставать, подниматься
run	ran	run	двигаться; управлять
say	said	said	говорить, сказать
see	saw	seen	видеть
sell	sold	sold	продавать
send	sent	sent	посылать
shake	shook	shaken	трясти, встряхивать
shine	shone	shone	сиять, сверкать
shoot	shot	shot	стрелять
show	showed	shown	показывать
shut	shut	shut	закрывать
sing	sang	sung	петь
sink	sank	sunk	опускать; тонуть
sit	sat	sat	сидеть
sleep	slept	slept	спать
smell	smelt	smelt	пахнуть
speak	spoke	spoken	говорить, разговаривать
spend	spent	spent	тратить
split	split	split	раскалываться
stand	stood	stood	стоять
strike	struck	struck	ударять, бить
swim	swam	swum	ПЛЯВАТЬ
take	took	taken	брать
teach	taught	taught	учить
tell	told	told	сказать (кому-л.), рассказывать
think	thought	thought	лумать
throw	threw	thrown	бросать, кидать
undergo	underwent	undergone	подвергаться
understand	understood	understood	понимать
Wear	wore	worn	носить (об одежде)
write	wrote	written	писать

## УКАЗАТЕЛЬ СЛОВ

Aa		Cc		contribute	3Б, 8А 8А
ability	10 <b>A</b>	call for	1A	convenient	6A
abroad	3Б	carry out	1A	cool	5A
abyssai	5A	cause	4A	cost	7A, 10A
accept	4Б	caving	85	crack	46
access	8A	certain	7A	crop	7A
accumulate	6A	change	16	crosscut	76
accuracy	2A	charcoal	6A	cross-section	8A
accurate	2A	choice	10A	crude	6A
adit	7Б	choose	3A	crush	96
adjacent	5A	chute	8A	crust	3Б, 4А
advance	25	clay	4A		,
advantage	8Б	clearing	9A	Dd	
advantageous	8Б	cleavage	5Б	<del></del>	
aerial	7 <b>A</b>	cleave	5Б	dangerous	3A
affect	9A	collect	3A	deal	1Б
allocate	10A	colliery	1A	decay	4A
allocation	10A	combustion	6Б	define	5 <b>B</b>
ancient	6A	commit	10Б	deliver	8E
angle	7Б	commodity	10Б	demand	1 <b>b</b> , 10 <b>A</b>
appear	1A	common	5A	department	2A 10B
approximate	7Б	compare	8A	deplete	10B
archive	2 <b>A</b>	compete	10Б	depletion	10 <u>6</u> 3A
ash	5A	competition	10E	deposit	3A 4A
associate	бA	competitive	10Б	derive	3A
assume	10 <b>1</b> 5	compose	1 <b>B</b>	describe	3A
assumption	10Б	composition	1Б	descriptive	1 <b>5</b>
attend	2 <u>A</u>	comprehensive	2A 16	design	4A
authority	3Б	comprise	1 <b>D</b>	destroy detailed	3B
		concentrate concentration	1A	detarred	1B
		concernation	2A	develop	8A
Bb		confine	105	development	8A
backhoe	9Б	confirm	35	differ	25
band	5 <u>B</u>	conform	10 <b>Б</b>	difference	2B
bed	1A	confront	10A	different	2Б
bedded	1A	connect	1 <b>Б</b>	differentiate	106
belt	5A	consider	2A. 3B	dig	7A
bench	6Б	considerable	2A	digger	7A
bit	7 <b>B</b>	consideration	2A	dimension	5A
blast	9Б	consolidate	4A	dip	7Б
blasting	9 <b>B</b>	constituent	5Б	direct	1A
blend	6Б	consume	10A	directly	1A
body	5A	consumer	10A	disappear	2A
borehole	7Б	consumption	10A	dissolve	4A
break	9 <b>A</b>	contain	4Б	dissolvent	4A
breakage	9A	continuity	6Б	distribute	5Б
burn	6A	contract	4Б	disturb	5Б

divide	7A	extend	1Б	gravity	8Б
domestic	6Б	external	4A	Hh	
draw	3A	extrusion	5A		
dredging	7A	extrusive	4A	handle	9A
drift	8A	Ff		hard	4Б
drill	7A			hardly	4Б
drilling	7 <b>A</b>	face	8A	hardware	1Б
drive	8A	facilitate	3 <b>A</b>	harm	3A
dump	9A	facility (-ies)	3A, 10B	harmful	3A
dumping	9A	fault	6Б	haul	8Б
dyke	5A	ferrous metals	1 <b>A</b>	haulage	8.6
T2 -		field	1Б	heap	9A
Ee		find	1Б	heat	6A
earth-mover	9Б	fine	5A	hoist	9A
education	1A	fire damp	3A	household	105
elect	3Б	fissure	4Б	hydraulic	1Б
embrace	3Б	flaky	5Б	hydraulicking	9A
emerge	10Б	flame	6Б	hypabyssal	6A
emergence	10Б	floor	8A	•• •	
employ	2A, 10A	flow	5A	<b>li</b>	
employment	2A	fluid	5Б	igneous	4A
enable	10A	fold	6Б	imply	10Б
engineering	1Б	folding	6Б	inclination	8A
ensure	8Ā	foliate	5 <b>B</b>	inclined	5A, 8A
enterprise	1B, 10A	force	5A	indicate	7A
entire	3Б	foreign	3Б	inflame	6Б
entrepreneur		former	3B	inflammable	6Б
entry	8Б	fossil	6A	influence	4B
environment		found	2Б	intermediate	4Б 6Б
establish	1D, JA	foundation	2Б	internal	4A
establish	6 <b>B</b>	fracture	4 <b>B</b>	introduction	16
evaluate	10A	fragmentary	5A		6A
evaluation	10A	freeze	4B	intrusion	4A
	10A 6A		9A	intrusive	
evidence	2 <b>5</b>	friable	9A 2A	investigate	3Б
excavate	2B 2B	fundamental	2A	iron	1 <b>A</b>
excavation		Gg		Jj	
excavator	9 <b>6</b>	_		-	2.4
excess	5 <b>5</b>	galena	7A	just	3A
exist	3 <b>B</b>	giant	8Б	justly	3Б
expand <sub>.</sub>	4B	glacier	4A	Ll	
expansion	4B	glass	5A		
expect	7A	glassy	5A	lateral	4Б
experience	2Б	gold	5A	layer	4A
explode	9A	goods	10A	lead	7A
exploit	<b>75</b>	govern	8A	level	8A
exploration	7A	grab	9Б	levelling	2A, 9A
exploratory	7A	gradual(ly)	4Б	liable	6Б
explore	7A	graduate	1Б	like	4A
expose	4A	grain	4A	lime	4A
exposure	4A	gravel	4A	limestone	4A

liquid	6A	particle	4A	removal	8A
load	9A	parting	6Б	remove	8A
loader	9A	pay	10A	represent	4A
longwall	8Б	payable	10A	require	2A
look for	7A	payment	10Б	research	1 <b>A</b>
loose	4A	payout	10Ъ	resist	4Б
lorry	9A	peat	4A	resistance	4Б
lose	8Б	penetrate	4Б	resistant	4Б
loss	8Б	permit	5A	result	9Б
lustre	6Б	phenomenon	4Б	reveal	1Б
lustrous	6Б	pillar	8Б	пів	8A
N.C		pit	7Б	rig	7Б
Mm		plane	6Б	rock	1Б, 4А
make up	4A	plate	5Б	roof	8A
malleable	7A	plough	9Б	room	8Б
manage	2Б	power-shovel	9Б	run	5Б
management	1Б	predominate	8Б	Ss	
manufacture	6A	preliminary	2Б		
marble	5Б	present v	2A	safe	3A
matter	6Б	presentation	2A	safety	3A
mean	2Б	pressure	4Б, 5Б	sample	7Б
meaning	2Б	probably	5A	sand	4A
means	2Б	process	1А, 10Б	sandstone	4A
measure	7Б	processing	10Б	satisfy	8Б
mention	5Б	prominent	3Б	scarce	10A
metalliferous	2Б	property	1Б	scarcity	10A
mica	5A	protect	8Б	schist	4A
moisture	6Б	protection	1Б	<ul> <li>schistose</li> </ul>	4A
mudstone	6A	prove	7A	seam	3A
		proving	7A	search	7A
Nn		proximity	2A	section	7Б
notwithstanding	8Б	purpose	6A	secure	10A
number	2A	pursue	10Б	security	10A
_		D.,		sediment	4A
Oo		Rr		sedimentary	4A
observe	2A	range	1Б, 9Б	sedimentation	4A
obtain	2A	rank	6Б	sequence	7Б, 8Б
occur	4Б	rapid	1 <b>A</b>	shaft	8A
occurrence	4Б	rate	4Б, 9Б	shale	4A, 6A
offer	1Б	reach	8Б	shallow	5A
opencast (mines)	1 <b>A</b>	realize	2Б	shape	1Б
opening	7A	recognize	2Б	sheet	5Б
openpit	1Б	recreation	1Б	shield	86
open up	7 <b>A</b>	refer (to)	4Б	significance	3Б
overburden	7Б	regular	6Б	significant	3Б
		regularity	3Б, бБ	sill	5A
Pp		relate	3А, 5Б	sillstone	4A
-	<b>.</b> .	relation	5Б	similar	6Б
panning	7A	relationshi p	5Б	sink	7.5
partici pate	10Б	reliable	7Б	size	4Б
participation	10Б	remote	9Б	skill	1Б

slate slope	5Б 7Б, 9Б	successful succession	3А 4Б	use utilize	6Б 6Б
smelt society software	6Б 3Б 1Б	such as supply support	2Б 10А 9Б	Vv	4.
soluble solution	4Б 4Б	Tt	,2	valuable value variable	4А 1Б, 4А 4А
solvent split	46 56	tabular technique	8A 1A	various vary	3Б, 4А 4А
staff state steep	3Б 3А 7Б	thickness thus trace	4А, 6Б 1Б 5Б	vein volatile	5А 6Б
stock store	5А 6Б, 7А	trade train	10A 3A	<b>Ww</b> waste	8A
stowing strata stratification	8Б 6Б 4А	traversing trench	2А 7Б	weathering well	4Б 8А
stratify strike	4А 7Б	Uu	45	work out	7А 2Б
stripping substance success	2Б, 5Б 4А 3А	undergo uniform uniformity	4Б 4Б, 6Б 6Б	workable workshop	7А 1Б

#### ОТВЕТЫ НА КРОССВОРДЫ

#### К уроку 3.

Skochinsky;
 Terpigorev;
 Lomonosov;
 Saukov;
 Vernadsky;
 Protodyakonov;
 Gubkin;
 Fersman;
 Howitt;
 Boky;
 Obruchev;
 Melnikov;
 Berg;
 Karpinsky;
 Shevyakov.

### К уроку 4.

По горизонтали: igneous (us), weathering (weather, ring, in, her), excess, disturb, hard, relic, cause, use, vary, particle(s) (part, art, article), consolidate (consol, lid, date, ate, at, on, solid)

По вертикали: incline, inclined (line), decay, gravel (rave — говорить бессвязно, бредить), day, vein, expose (pose), set, pressure (press, sure), trace (race, ace — очко, ac), shale (hale — крепкий, здоровый), pub, rail (ail — беспокоить, причинять боль); penetrate (pen, rate, rat, ate), fracture (act), fissure, lime, uniform, form (or), mica, cast, siltstone, stone (tone, ton)

#### К уроку 6.

По горизонтали: amount, is, sediment(ary), gas, (un)burnt, belt, rocks, ore, evidence, ash, shiver, thick(ness), dime, dimension, men, charcoal, coal, accumulate

Ho eepmukasu: ash, shallow, dig, metamorphic, ice, odd, aim, igneous, intrusive, stone, ton, one, so, matter, fragment(ary), tar, pyrite, fault, intermediate, in, term, media, at, ate

#### К уроку 10.

Ho copusonmanu: price, trade(r), good(s), ale, sale, consumption, ad, business, dis(tribute), economics, money, tar, get, target, add, define, deposit

По вертикали: car, arc, city, odd, demand, man, reap, ten, mark, market, im(port), se(cure), investment

## СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

предисловие	3
Unit 1. Mining Education in Russia           А. Грамматика           1. Глаголы to be "быть" и to have "нысть"	4
Структура повествовательного предложения	8
мени	
4. Общие и специальные вопросы	
Б. Грамматика	** 1-
Разделительный вопрос	21
Texcm B. Mining and Geological Higher Education in Russia	
В.Текст В.	28
Unit 2. Mining Education Abroad	
А. Грамматика	
1. Основные формы глагола	
2. Времена группы Perfect  Tekem A. Mining Education in Great Britain	
_	31
Б. Грамматика Модальные глаголы и их эквиваленты	. 41
Texcm 5. Mining Education in Great Britain (continued)	
В. Текст В.	
Дискуссия. Проблемы горного образования в России и за рубежом	
Unit 3. Outstanding Russian Scientists in Geology and Mining	
А. Грамматика	
1. Продолженные времена (Continuous Tenses)           2. Страдательный залог (The Passive Voice)	
Tekem A. A.M. Terpigorev (1873-1959)	
Б. Грамматика	
Имя числительное	71
Текст Б. A.P. Karpinsky (1847-1936)	
В. Текст В.	
Конференция. Выдающиеся ученые в горном деле	
Kpocceopd (Crossword)	83
Unit 4. The Earth's Crust and Useful Minerals	
А. Грамматика	
1. Конструкция there + be	
2. Местоимения some, any, по и их производные	80

Teкcm A. Sedimentary Rocks	)
Б. Грамматика	
1. Особенности употребления и способы перевода	
страдательного залога	
2. Количественные местоимения many, much, few, little 99	
Текст Б. Weathering of Rocks	
Текст В. The Earth's Crust 10	
Kpoccвopд (Crossword)11	1
Unit 5. Rocks of Earth's Crust	
А. Грамматика	
Функции причастия прошедшего времени (Participle II)	2
Tekem A. Igneous Rocks	
Б. Грамматика	
1. Степени сравнения прилагательных и наречий	1
2. Место наречий в предложении	
3. Наречия на -/у	
Текст Б. Metamorphic Rocks	
В. Текст В.	
Unit 6. Sources of Energy	
А. Грамматика	_
Герундий (The Gerund)13	
Tekem A. Fossil Fuels14	l
Б. Грамматика	
Причастие настоящего времени (The Present Participle)	
Texcm B. Coal and Its Classification	1
В. Текст В	7
Дискуссия. Энергия и жизнь	
Unit 7. Prospecting and Exploration	
А. Грамматика 1. Сравнение функций причастия и герундия (повторение) 16.	1
2. Инфинитив (The Infinitive) и его функции в предложении 16.	
Текст A. Prospecting	
	,
Б. Грамматика	_
Инфинитивные обороты	
Tekem E. Exploration of Mineral Deposits	
B. Tekem B	
Kpocceopd (Crossword)18	
Интервью с проф. Дж. Мортоном18	5

Unit 8. Mining Methods	
А. Грамматика	
Условные предложения	188
Texcm A. General Information on Mining	192
Б. Грамматика	
1. Многофункциональность глаголов to be и to have.	197
2. Отрицательные предложения	198
Texcm 5. Methods of Working Bedded Deposits Under	ground 201
B. Texcm B. Mining Thick Seams	208
Дискуссия о проблемах горнодобывающей промышленно	
Unit 9. Mining and Environment	
А. Грамматика	
Независимый причастный оборот (The Absolute Partici	ple Construc-
tion)	
Texcm A. Open-cast Mining	218
Б. Грамматика	
1. Сложное предложение	224
2. Согласование времен в косвенной речи	225
Texcm B. Ore Mining	229
B. Texcm B. Mining and Environment	234
Конференция	236
Unit 10. Reconomics and Mining	239
A. Tekem A. Some Concepts on Economics	241
Б. Текст Б. Mineral Markets	249
B. Tekem B. US Coal Industry Today	255
Кроссворд (Crossword)	
приложение	
Краткий фонетический курс	
Способы словообразования	269
Сводные таблицы спряжения глаголов	
Список неправильных глаголов	
Указатель слов	
Ответы на кроссворды	285